# OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation
Maintenance
Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Genesis Branded Vehicle reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.

As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

## CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS BRANDED VEHICLE

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Genesis Branded Vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

## TWO-WAY RADIO OR CELLULAR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or cellular telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

## SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE.

These titles indicate the following:

**⚠ DANGER**

**DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.**

***NOTICE***

**NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.**

# FOREWORD

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of distinguished people who drive Genesis Branded Vehicles. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis Branded Vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis Branded Vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis Branded Vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products dealers are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

# GENESIS BRAND MOTOR COMPANY

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Genesis Branded Vehicle specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 8-6 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.**

Copyright 2016 Genesis Branded Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Genesis Branded Motor Company.

# HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Chapters: This manual has eight chapters plus an index. Each chapters begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that chapters has the information you want.

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, as well as damage to your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.

This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION.

**⚠ DANGER**

**DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.**

***NOTICE***

**NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.**

# FUEL REQUIREMENTS

## Gasoline engine

### *Unleaded*

#### For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you use unleaded gasoline which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher. You may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of RON 91-94 / AKI 87-90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle. (Do not use methanol blended fuels)

#### Except Europe

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.**

**Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified (We recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for details.)**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

### *Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol*

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.**

### *Other fuels*

Using fuel additives such as:

- Silicone fuel additive
- MMT (Magnanese, Mn) fuel additive
- Ferrocene (iron-based) fuel additive
- Other metallic-based fuel additives

may result in cylinder misfire, poor acceleration, engine stalling, damage to the catalyst, or abnormal corrosion, and may cause damage to the engine resulting in a reduction in the overall life of the powertrain.

***NOTICE***

**Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

### *Use of MTBE*

Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapor lock or hard starting.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)**

### *Do not use methanol*

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

### *Fuel Additives*

Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that you use unleaded gasoline which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).

For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (for Europe)/ 5,000km (except Europe). Additives are available from your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

### *Operation in foreign countries*

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

## VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electronic devices.

***NOTICE***

**All warning sounds (e.g. welcome/good-bye sound, virtual engine sound) are generated from the exterior amplifiers. If necessary, we recommend you to purchase Genesis/Hyundai Part to replace an exterior amplifier. Any unauthorized product may cause a malfunction of the exterior amplifiers.**

## VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.

## RETURNING USED VEHICLES (FOR EUROPE)

Genesis Branded Vehicle promotes an environmentally sound treatment for end of life vehicles and offers to take back your Genesis Branded Vehicle end of life vehicles in accordance with the European Union (EU) End of Life Vehicles Directive.

You can get detailed information from your national Genesis Branded Vehicle homepage.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | |
|---|---|
| Your vehicle at a glance | 1 |
| Safety system of your vehicle | 2 |
| Convenient features of your vehicle | 3 |
| Multimedia system | 4 |
| Driving your vehicle | 5 |
| What to do in an emergency | 6 |
| Maintenance | 7 |
| Specifications & Consumer information | 8 |
| Index | I |

# Safety system of your vehicle


Important safety precautions.....2-3
Always wear your seat belt.....2-3
Restrain all children.....2-3
Air bag hazards.....2-3
Driver distraction.....2-3
Control your speed.....2-4
Keep your vehicle in safe condition.....2-4
Seats.....2-5
Safety precautions.....2-7
Front seats.....2-8
Rear seats.....2-14
Additional switches for adjusting the front passenger seat.....2-16
VIP Seat modes switches.....2-17
Headrest.....2-24
Seat warmers and coolers.....2-29
Seat belts.....2-33
Seat belt safety precautions.....2-33
Seat belt warning light.....2-34
Seat belt restraint system.....2-35
Pre-Active Seat belt (PSB).....2-41
Additional seat belt safety precautions.....2-42
Care of seat belts.....2-44
Child restraint system.....2-45
Children always in the rear.....2-45
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS).....2-46
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS).....2-48

# Safety system of your vehicle

2

Air bag -Supplemental restraint system .....2-58
Where are the air bags? .....2-60
How does the air bags system operate? .....2-64
What to expect after an air bag inflates .....2-68
Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? .....2-70
SRS care .....2-75
Additional safety precautions .....2-76
Air bag warning labels .....2-77

# IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

## Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

## Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate child restraint. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

## Air bag hazards

While air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

## Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using cellular phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (i.e., MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email while driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

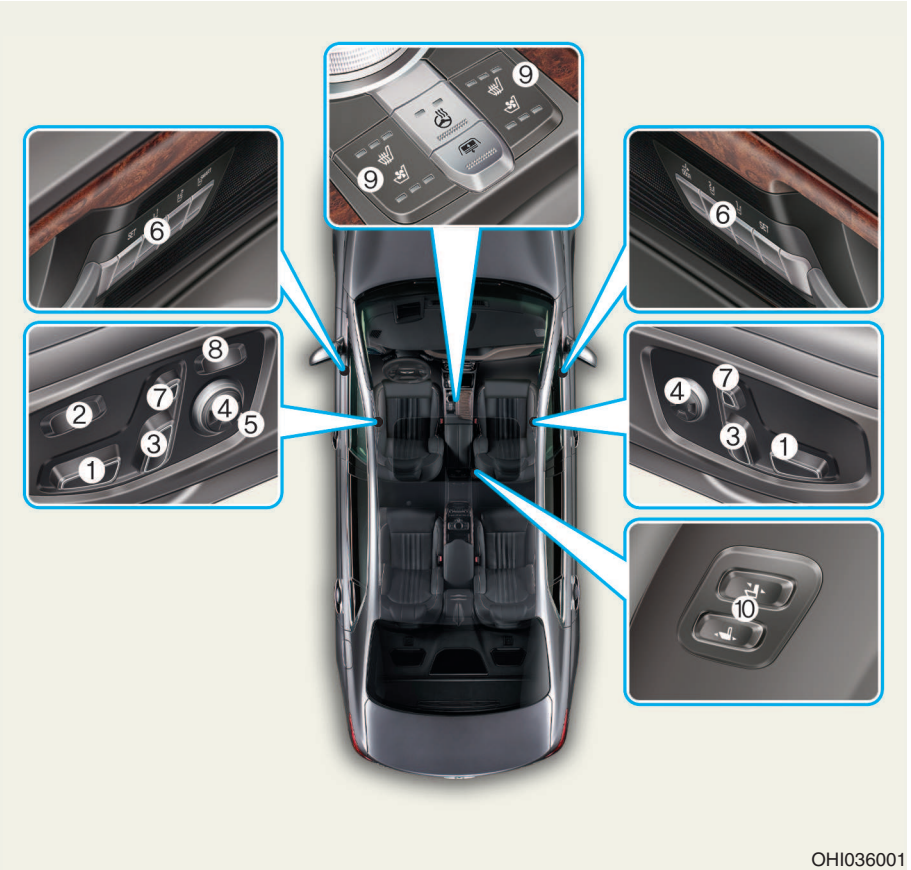
## Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

## Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

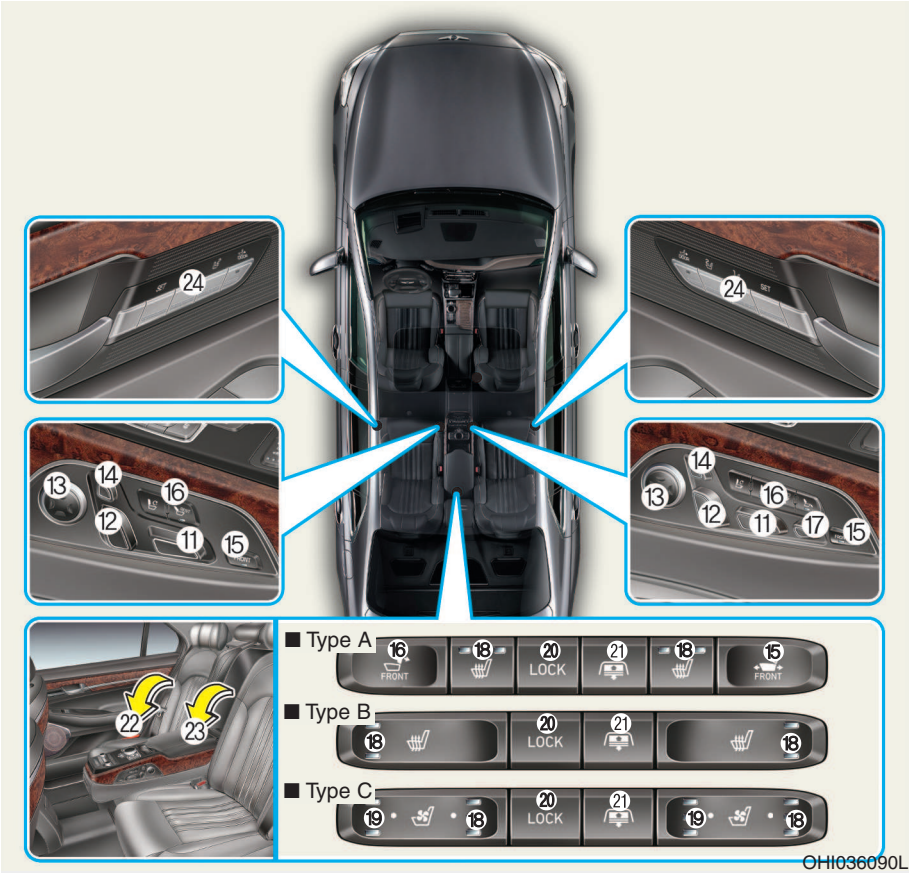
# SEATS




**Front seat**

1. Seat sliding forward or rearward /Seat cushion tilt adjustment /Seat cushion height adjustment
2. Seat cushion length adjustment
3. Seatback angle adjustment
4. Lumbar support adjustment
5. Seat bolster adjustment*
6. Seat position memory system
7. Headrest adjustment
8. Shoulder adjustment*
9. Seat warmer/Seat cooler (by air)
10. Seat sliding forward or rearward /Seatback angle adjustment (for front passenger seat)

* : if equipped




**Rear seat**

11. Seat sliding forward or rearward /Seat cushion tilt adjustment*
12. Seat sliding or shoulder adjustment*
13. Lumbar support adjustment*
14. Headrest adjustment*
15. Seat sliding forward or rearward /Seatback angle adjustment (for front passenger seat)
16. Seat mode switches*
17. Leg support*
18. Seat warmer
19. Seat cooler (by air)*
20. LOCK button
21. Rear curtain control
22. Armrest
23. Ski through
24. Seat position memory system

* : if equipped

## Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe, comfortable position plays an important role in driver and passenger safety together with the seat belts and air bags in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.**

### *Air bags*

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Sitting too close to an air bag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the air bag inflates. It is recommended that drivers allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the center of the steering wheel and their chest.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating air bag, take the following precautions:**

- **Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while maintaining the ability to maintain full control of the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.**
- **Hold the steering wheel by the rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **NEVER place anything or anyone between the air bag.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the dashboard to minimize the risk of leg injuries.**

### *Seat belts*

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip.

At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate child restraint systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat and adults must be restrained using the seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat belt:**

- **NEVER use one seat belt for more than one occupant.**
- **Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.**
- **NEVER allow children or small infants to ride in a passenger's lap.**
- **Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.**

## Front seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.

Pay extreme caution not to apply excessive force.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:**

- **NEVER attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.**
- **Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may exit out of the lighter causing a fire.**

**(Continued)**

(Continued)

- Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.
- If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful while adjusting the front seat position.

**⚠ WARNING**

To prevent injury:

- Do not adjust your seat while wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.
- Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.

**⚠ WARNING**

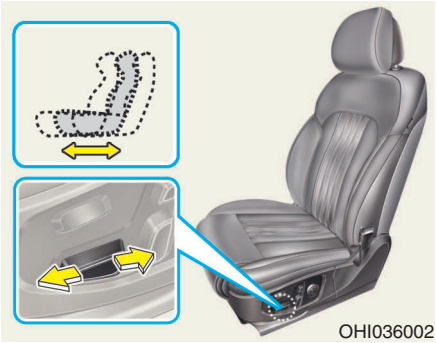
NEVER allow children in the vehicle unattended. The power seats are operable when the engine is turned off.

**NOTICE**

To prevent damage to the seats:

- Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.
- Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the engine is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.
- Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.

### *Forward and rearward adjustment*




To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

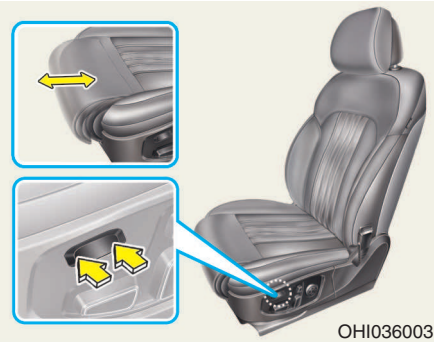
When the seat is adjusted forward or rearward, the headrest height and the seatback angle is automatically adjusted according to the position of the seat.

### Information

**The forward/rearward seat adjustment may be restricted, when the seatback is leaned back. Adjust your seat, as follows, before adjusting the seat position rearward.**

**Push and hold the control switch rearward as far as possible, release the control switch, and re-push the control switch rearwardagain. Then, the seat position is adjusted rearward, while putting the seatback upright.**

### *Seat cushion length adjustment (for driver's seat)*




To move the front part of the cushion forward:

1. Push the front part of the control switch to move the seat cushion to the desired length.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

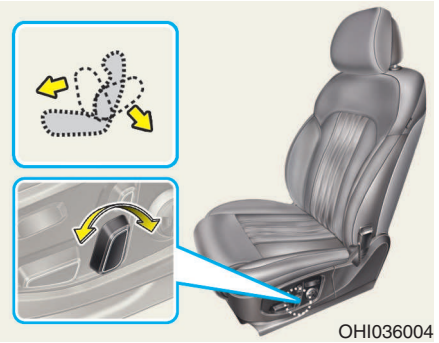
To move the front part of the cushion rearward:

1. Push the rear part of the control switch to move the seat cushion to the desired length.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

**NOTICE**

**Be careful not to damage your body or clothes when using the cushion adjustment.**

### *Seatback angle*




To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

**Information**

**The seatback angle adjustment may be restricted, when the seatback is reclined to some point. At this time, release the seatback angle switch and then re-push the switch rearward. The front seat will slide forward and the seatback angle will recline even more.**

### Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

**WARNING**

**NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.**

**Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**

**(Continued)**

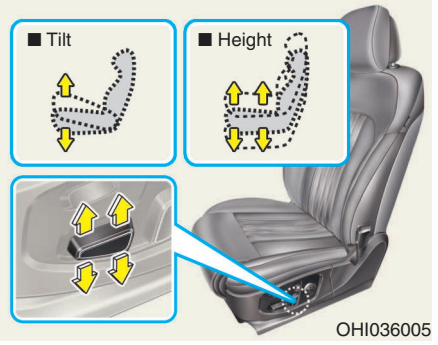
**(Continued)**

**Driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

### *Seat cushion height and tilt*



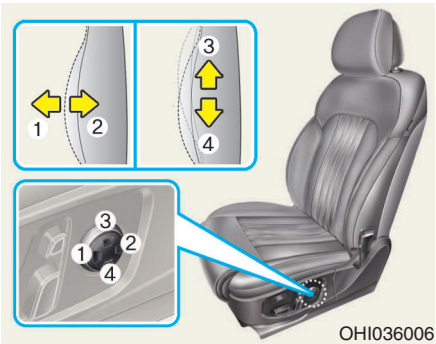

To tilt or change the height of the seat cushion:

1. Push the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

   Push the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat cushion.

2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Lumbar support*



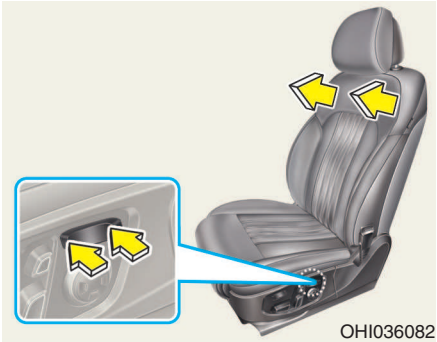
OHI036006

- The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch.
- Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
- To move the support position up or down, press switch (3) or (4).

The lumbar support does not operate up or down when the lumbar support is in the rearmost position.

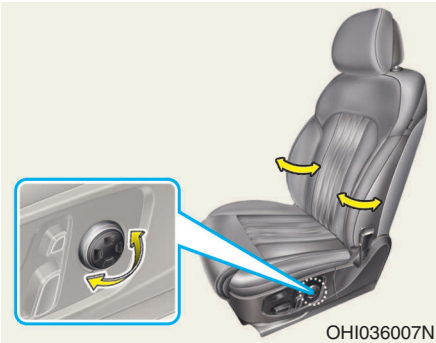
In this case, to use the system, slightly increase support by pushing the front portion of the switch (1).

### *Seat shoulder adjustment (for driver's seat, if equipped)*


OHI036082

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the shoulder angle to the desired position.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Seat bolster adjustment (for driver's seat, if equipped)*


OHI036007N

To change the height of the seat bolster:

1. Pull or push the lever.
2. Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

### *Easy access switch*

A front seat moves slightly rearward, when a passenger opens a front door with the DOOR indicator illuminated.

A front seat moves slightly forward when a passenger closes a front door with the DOOR indicator illuminated.

To deactivate the easy access function, press the DOOR switch (indicator OFF).

### *Seatback pocket*

The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.**

## Rear seats

**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER adjust the rear power seats when a child restraint is installed in that seat.**
- **NEVER allow children in the car unattended. The power seats are operable when the engine is turned off.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent injury:**

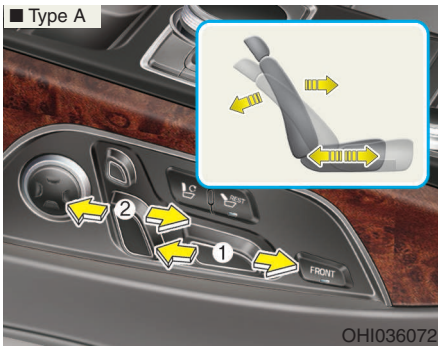
- **Do not adjust your seat while wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.**
- **Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.**

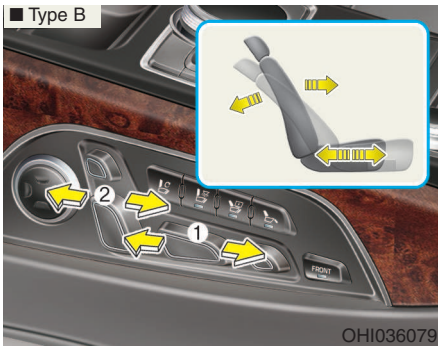
**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the seats:**

- **Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.**
- **Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the engine is turned off. This may result in unnecessary drain of the battery.**
- **Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.**

### *Seat sliding, seatback angle and seat cushion tilt adjustment*




**Vehicles not equipped with shoulder adjustment**

- Seat sliding

Push the control switch (1) forward or rearward to slide the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position. The seatback angle is adjusted automatically along with the seat sliding position.

- Seatback angle

Push the control switch (2) forward or rearward to move the seatback angle to the desired position.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position. The seat sliding position is adjusted automatically along with the seatback angle.

### Vehicles equipped with shoulder adjustment

• Seat sliding and Seatback angle

Push the control switch (1) forward or rearward to slide the seat and seat-back angle to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

• Shoulder adjustment

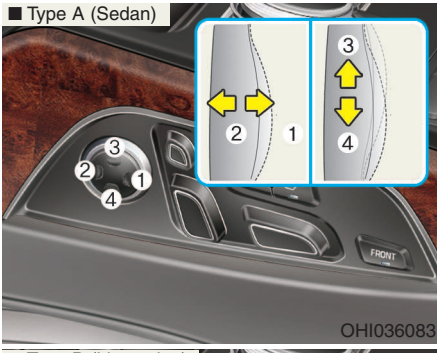
Push the control switch (2) forward or rearward to move the shoulder angle to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### Cushion tilt adjustment (1, if equipped)

Push the front portion of the control switch (1) up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

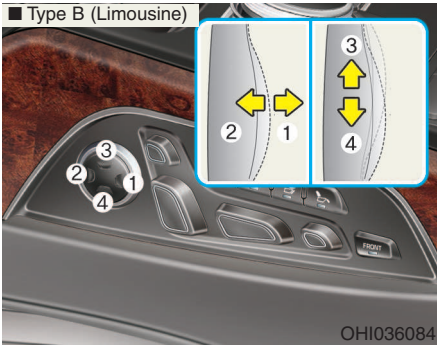
## *Lumbar support (if equipped)*

■ Type A (Sedan)




OHI036083

■ Type B (Limousine)




OHI036084

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.

To move the support position up or down, press the switch (3) or (4).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust your seat position forward while fastening the seat-belt. It may apply abnormally high pressure on your abdomen. Adjust your seat position first, and then fasten the seatbelt.**

## *Easy access switch (if equipped)*

OHI036073

• If equipped with IMS system

A rear seat moves slightly rearward, when a passenger opens a rear door with the DOOR indicator illuminated.

A rear seat moves slightly forward when a passenger closes a rear door with the DOOR indicator illuminated.

To deactivate the easy access function, press the DOOR switch (indicator OFF).

• If not equipped with IMS

Easy access system always operates.

## Additional switches for adjusting the front passenger seat

Additional switches are provided to move the front passenger seat forward and backward (1), and adjust the seatback angle (2) from the rear seats.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the passenger seat when a passenger is seated.**

### *VIP switches for adjusting the front passenger seat*

A passenger, who occupies a rear seat behind the front passenger's seat, can control the front passenger's seat position by operating the switch.

However, the VIP convenient function does not operate, when the front passenger's seat is occupied, or when the front passenger's door is opened.

### *i* Information

**VIP convenient function switches for adjusting the front passenger's seat do not operate in the following situations.**

- **A passenger occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **An item occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **The front passenger's door is open.**
- **The front passenger's seatbelt is fastened.**

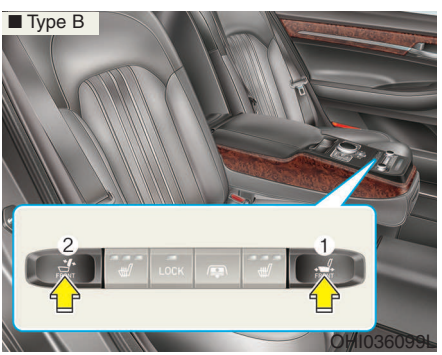
■ Type A

OHI036074

Press the FRONT button. When the FRONT indicator illuminates, a rear seat passenger can control the front passenger's seat position back and forth (1), seat cushion height (2), seat-back angle (3), and headrest position (4).

When the VIP convenient function is not used over a certain period of time, the FRONT indicator automatically goes out. Then, the switch starts to control the rear seat position again.

■ Type B




OHI036099L

A rear seat passenger can control the front passenger's seat position back and forth (1) and seatback angle (2).

## VIP seat mode switches (if equipped)

### *Relaxation mode*

■ Type A

OHI036081

■ Type B

OHI036080

Press the switch (1) to adjust both the front passenger's seat and the rear seat, as follows.

- Front passenger's seat

1. The seat position is adjusted forward, the seatback is folded, and the headrest is lowered.
2. The headrest is adjusted backward, and the seat cushion tilt is lowered.
3. The seat cushion height is lowered.

- Rear seat

- Sedan, Limousine
  (3 seat configuration)

1. The seatback (including the shoulder portion) is leaned back, the headrest is tilted backward, and the headrest is lowered.
2. The seat position is adjusted forward, the seat cushion tilt is raised and the lower lumbar support increases.

- Limousine (2 seat configuration)

1. The seatback (including the shoulder portion) is leaned back, the headrest is tilted backward, and the headrest is lowered.
2. The seat position is adjusted forward, the seat cushion tilt is raised and the lower lumbar support increases.
3. The leg support moves up and slides forward.

### Information

**Relaxation mode switches for adjusting the front passenger's seat do not operate in the following situations.**

- **When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**
- **A passenger occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **An item occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **The front passenger's door is open.**
- **The front passenger's seatbelt is fastened.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not re-press the relaxation mode switch again, while operating the seat positions for relaxation mode. It may abruptly stop the seat movement.**
- **When you operate the seat control switch while adjusting the seat positions for the relaxation mode, it stops the automatic seat position adjustment. In this case, manually adjust the seat positions.**
- **Any items, which occupy the front passenger's seat, may get damaged while automatically adjusting the seat positions for the relaxation mode. Do not put any items on the front passenger's seat.**

### *Return function*

Press the switch (2) to adjust both the front passenger's seat and the rear seat, as follows.

- Rear seat

- Sedan, Limousine
  (3-seat configuration)

1. The seat position is adjusted to the rearmost position, the seat cushion tilt is adjusted to the lowest position, and the lumbar support decreases.
2. The headrest is lowered, and the seatback (including the shoulder portion) is leaned backward.

- Limousine (2-seat configuration)

1. The leg support moves down and slides backward.
2. The seat position is adjusted to the rearmost position, the seat cushion tilt is adjusted to the lowest position, and the lumbar support decreases.
3. The headrest is lowered, and the seatback (including the shoulder portion) is leaned backward.

- Front passenger's seat

1. The seat position is adjusted backward.
2. The seat cushion height is raised, and the headrest is adjusted to the lowest height.

### Information

**Return function switch for adjusting the front passenger's seat do not operate in the following situations.**

- **When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**
- **A passenger occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **An item occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **The front passenger's door is open.**
- **The front passenger's seatbelt is fastened.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not re-press return function switch again, while operating the seat positions for relaxation mode. It may abruptly stop the seat movement.**
- **When you operate the control switch while adjusting the seat positions with return function switch, it stops the automatic seat position adjustment. In this case, manually adjust the seat positions.**

### *Reading mode(Limousine VIP seat with 2-seat configuration)*

Press the switch (3, if equipped) to adjust the rear seat, as follows.

1. The leg support is adjusted to the lowest/rearmost position.
2. The seat position is adjusted to the rearmost position, and the seat cushion tilt is adjusted to the lowest position.
3. The seatback shoulder portion is leaned backward.

The system generates a beeping sound and automatically turns ON the room lamp (on the right side), when the seat-position adjustment is completed for the reading mode.

**NOTICE**

- **Do not re-press the reading mode switch again, while operating the seat position for the reading mode. It may abruptly stop the seat movement.**
- **When you operate the control switch while adjusting the seat position for the reading mode, it stops the automatic seat position adjustment. In this case, manually adjust the seat positions.**

### *Video-watching mode (Limousine VIP seat with 2-seat configuration)*

Press the switch (4, if equipped) to adjust both the front passenger's seat and the rear seat, as follows.

- Front passenger's seat

1. The seat position/seatback angle are adjusted as programmed, and the headrest gets lower.
2. The seat cushion tilt is lowered, and the seat cushion height is raised.

- Rear seat

1. The leg support moves down and slides backward.
2. The seat cushion tilt is adjusted to the lowest position.
3. The headrest is lowered, and the seatback shoulder portion is folded backward.

**i Information**

**Video-watching mode switches for adjusting the front passenger's seat do not operate in the following situations.**

- **When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**
- **A passenger occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **An item occupies the front passenger's seat.**
- **The front passenger's door is open.**
- **The front passenger's seatbelt is fastened.**

### Information

**The rear seat forward/backward adjustment may start in a different position in accordance with your current seat position.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not re-press the video-watching mode switch again, while operating the seat positions for the video-watching mode. It may abruptly stop the seat movement.**
- **When you operate the control switch while adjusting the seat positions for the video-watching mode, it stops the automatic seat position adjustment. In this case, manually adjust the seat positions.**

### *Leg support*

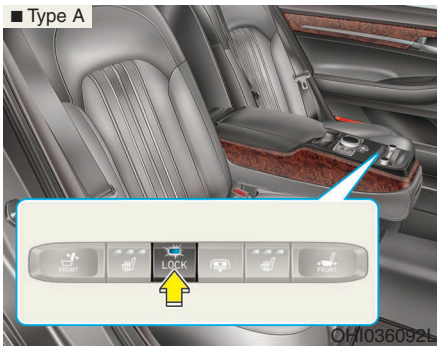
Press the switch (5, if equipped) to move the leg support up or down and to adjust the leg support extension. Control the leg support position for your convenience.

**WARNING**

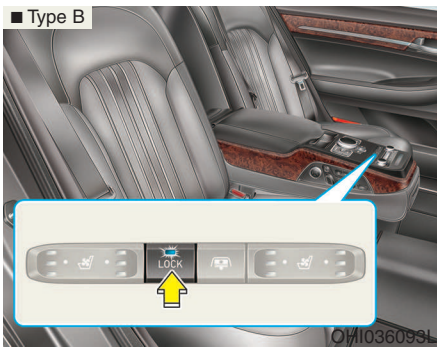
**Never let a child to operate the switch. It may inadvertently cause bodily injury.**

### *Rear switches operating limitation*

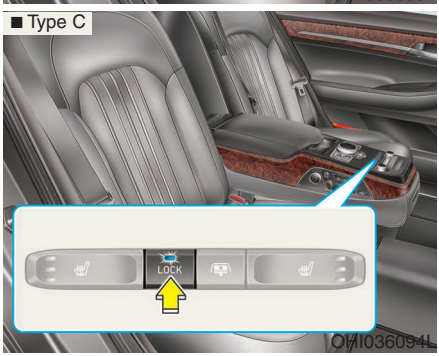
■ Type A




■ Type B




■ Type C



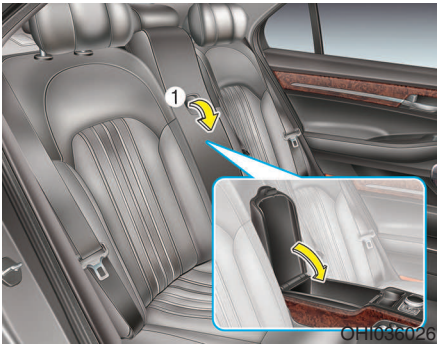

You can activate or deactivate the rear seat control by using the LOCK button on the rear armrest.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Deactivate the switch operation by pressing the LOCK button, when a child occupies a rear seat.**

For a vehicle with 2-seat configuration, you can also deactivate the switch operation on the DIS Display System monitor. For further details, refer to the DIS Display System manual.

### *Armrest*




The armrest is located in the center of the rear seat.

Grab the handle (1) on the upper end of the arm rest. Then, pull down the handle to use the arm rest.

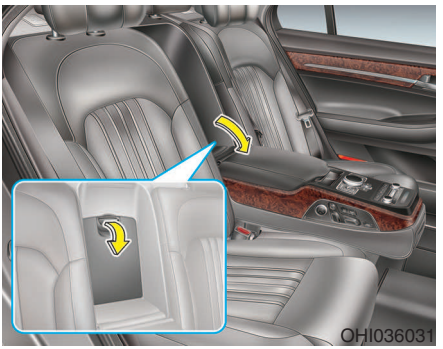
**NOTICE**

- **Do not put any items on the rear center seat. Those items may get damaged, when the arm rest is pulled down.**
- **Do not attempt to fold back the arm rest, when the cup holder is extended out.**

### Cup holder/Storage compartment

For further details, refer to "Rear Console Storage" and "Cup Holder" in chapter 3.

### *Carrying long/narrow cargo (if equipped)*




Additional cargo space is provided to accommodate long/narrow cargo (skis, poles, etc.) not able to fit properly in the trunk when closed.

1. Pull the armrest down.
2. Pull the cover down while pushing the release lever down.

**NOTICE**

- **Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.**
- **When both the arm rest and the panel, which locates between the rear seatback and the trunk for long-item storage, are folded down, put back the panel first, before folding back the arm rest. If not, the panel knobs and the arm rest knobs may interfere with each other and get damaged.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Make sure the engine is off, the shift lever is in P and the parking brake is applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. The vehicle may move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**
- **When cargo is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the cargo is properly secured to prevent it from moving while driving.**
- **Unsecured cargo in the passenger compartment can cause damage to the vehicle or injury to its occupants.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.**

## Headrest

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:**

- **Always properly adjust the headrests for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.**
- **NEVER let anyone ride in a seat with the headrest removed.**
- **Adjust the headrests so the middle of the headrests is at the same height as the height of the top of the eyes.**
- **NEVER adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.**
- **Make sure the headrest locks into position after adjusting it.**

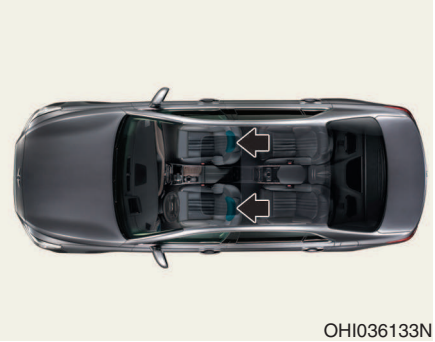
**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage, NEVER hit or pull on the headrests.**

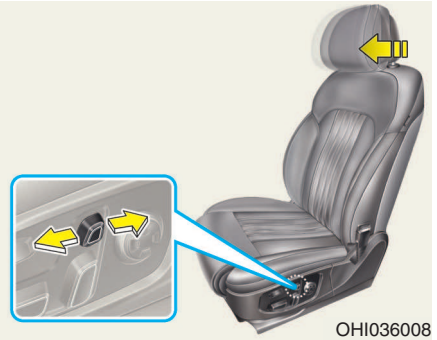
**⚠ CAUTION**

**When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility of the rear area.**

### *Front seat headrests*

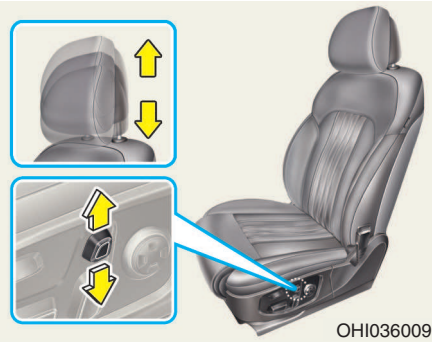

OHI036133N

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for the passengers safety and comfort.


OHI036008

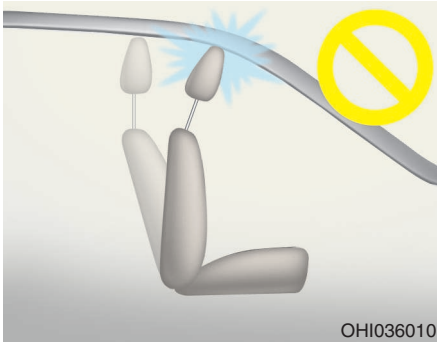
**Forward and rearward adjustment**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the headrest. Release the switch once the headrest reaches the desired position.


OHI036009

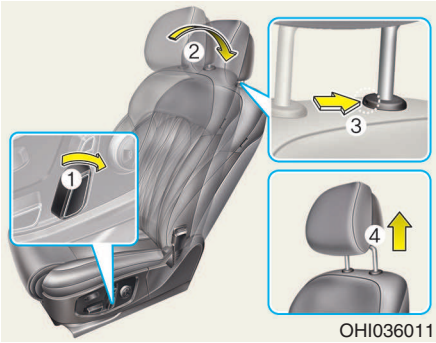
**Adjusting the height up and down**

Push the control switch up to raise or down to lower the headrest. Release the switch once the headrest reaches the desired position.




**NOTICE**

**If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.**



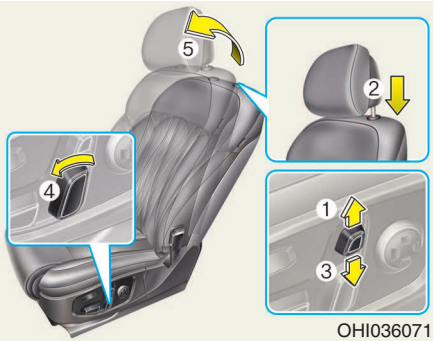

### Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) using the seatback angle switch (1).
2. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
3. Insert a thin-pointed tool into the headrest adjustment pole (3) and then remove the head restraint (4).

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER allow anyone to travel in a seat with the headrest removed.**



OHI036071

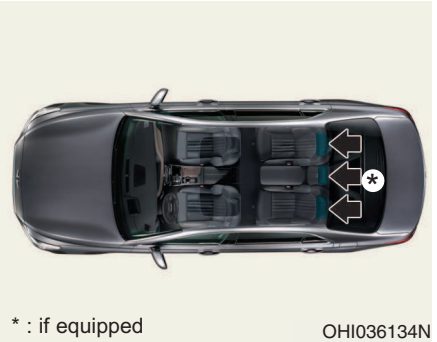
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Push the head restraint height control switch (1) up as far as it can go.
3. Put the headrest poles into the holes (2).
4. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height (3).
5. Recline the seatback (5) using the seatback angle switch (4).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.**

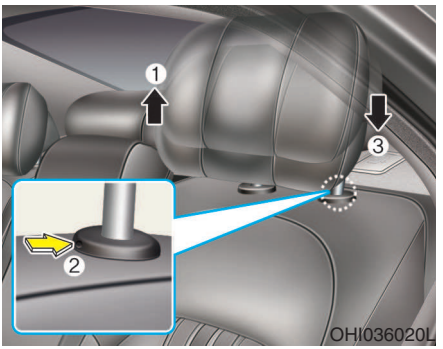
### *Rear seat headrests*



* : if equipped

OHI036134N

The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.



OHI036020L

**Adjusting the height up and down (manual, if equipped)**

To raise the headrest:

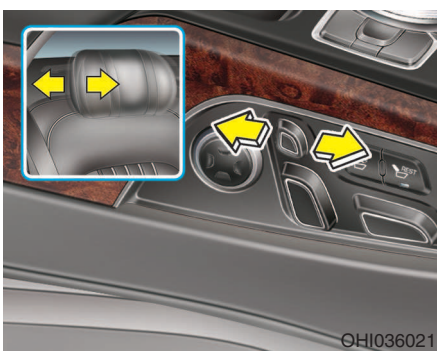
1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

### Adjusting the height up and down (power, if equipped)

Push the control switch up to raise or down to lower the headrest. Release the switch once the headrest reaches the desired position.

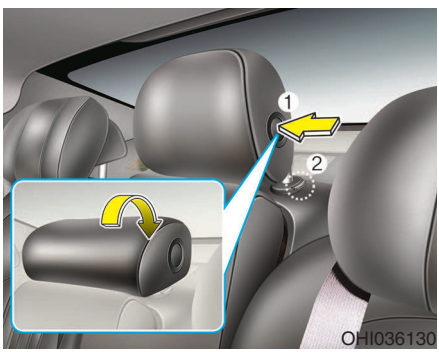



### Adjusting the headrest back and forth (power, if equipped)

Push the control switch forward to move the headrest forward. Push the control switch backward to move the headrest backward.

**NOTICE**

**Pay extreme caution not to damage the connectors, while removing the head restraint. Damage to the connectors may cause a technical problem.**




### Folding the center headrest (if equipped)

To fold the center headrest :

- When the rear-center headrest is not used, manually fold back the rear-center headrest while pressing the button (1) on the side. To use the rear-center headrest again, manually pull up the rear-center head restraint, until it is securely latched.
- You can remove the rear-center headrest by manually pulling up the rear-center head restraint, while pressing the release button.

### Information

**You can adjust the rear-center headrest to the further lower height by pressing the button (2), which is located under the rear-center head restraint, with the armrest folded back.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the center head restraint is not in use, fold the head restraint back to prevent it from interfering with your vision through the rear window.**

***NOTICE***

**If the center head restraint is in the lowest position, raise the head restraint before folding back the armrest.**

## Seat warmers and coolers

### *Seat warmers*

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The seat warmers can cause a SERIOUS BURN, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.**

**Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.**

**People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:**

- **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.**
- **People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.**
- **Fatigued individuals.**
- **Intoxicated individuals.**
- **People taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness.**

**⚠ WARNING**

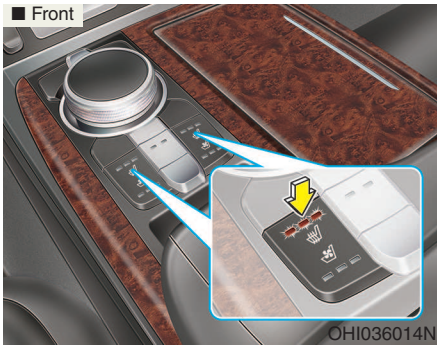
**NEVER place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is in operation, such as a blanket or seat cushion. This may cause the seat warmer to overheat, causing a burn or damage to the seat.**

***NOTICE***

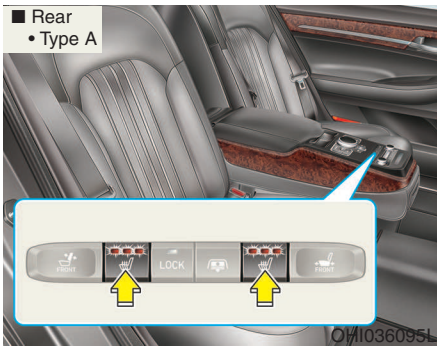
**To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:**

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline to clean the seats.**
- **Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.**
- **Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer or air ventilation system.**
- **Re-starting the engine automatically turns ON the seat warmer again, when the Engine Start /Stop button was pressed to the OFF position without turning OFF the seat warmer.**

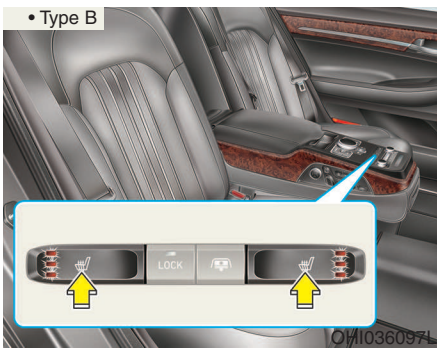
■ Front




■ Rear
• Type A




• Type B




While the engine is running, push the switch to warm the seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

▶ Temperature control(Manual)

- Each time you push the switch, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

▶ Temperature control(Automatic)

The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low-temperature burns after being manually turned ON.

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

30min 60min

You may manually press the button to increase the seat temperature. However, it soon returns to the automatic mode again.

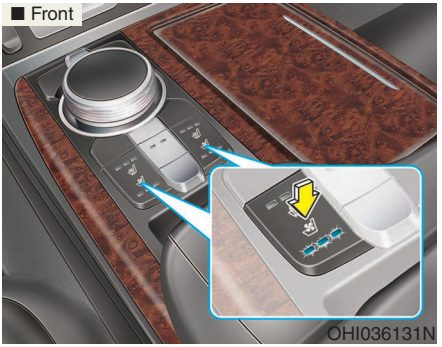
- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.

## Information

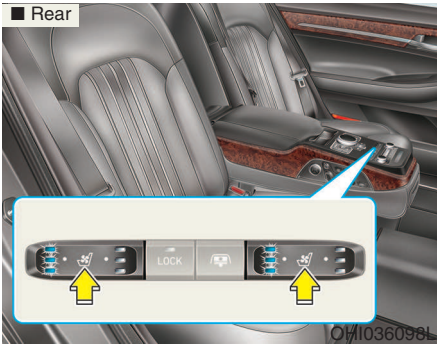
**With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat automatically controls the seat temperature by designed temperature.**

### *Seat coolers (by air) (if equipped)*

■ Front




■ Rear




The seat coolers are provided to cool the seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

When the operation of the seat cooler is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

While the engine is running, push the switch to cool the seat.

- Each time you push the switch, the air flow changes as follows:

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat cooler operating, the seat cooler will turn OFF.

### *i* Information

- **If the outside temperature is under 4°C (39°F), the seat cooler may not operate.**
- **Use the seat cooler when the climate control system is on. Using the seat cooler for prolonged periods of time with the climate control system off could cause the climate control seat performance to be reduced.**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the seat cooler and seats:**

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline to clean the seats.**
- **Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the seats and seatbacks; this may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.**
- **Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.**
- **Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the seat cooler.**
- **If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

# SEAT BELTS

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

## Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Air bags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. Take the following precautions when adjusting and wearing seat belts:**

- **ALWAYS properly restrain children under age 13 in the rear seats.**
- **NEVER allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible and properly restrain them in the seat.**
- **NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.**
- **NEVER ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.**
- **Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged.**
- **Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles of other seats.**
- **NEVER unfasten the seat belt while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle interfering with the seat belt latch mechanism. This may prevent the seat belt from fastening securely.**
- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies will not operate properly. Always replace:**

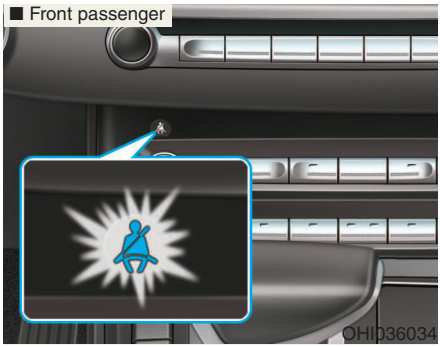
- **Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.**
- **Damaged hardware.**
- **The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.**

## Seat belt warning light

### *Seat belt warning*

■ Driver

■ Front passenger




(1) Driver's seat belt warning light

(2) Front passenger's seat belt warning light (if equipped)

As a reminder to the driver and front passenger, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the Engine Start/Stop button ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the Engine Start/Stop button is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the Engine Start/Stop button is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9 km/h (5 mph), the warning light will continue to illuminate until you drive under 6 km/h (3 mph).

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20 km/h (12 mph) the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

### Information

- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the center fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**

## Seat belt restraint system

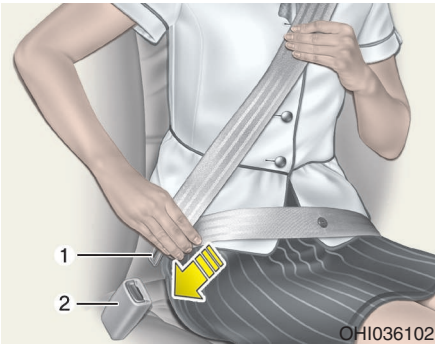
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

  The 3-point seatbelts are installed both on the front seats and on the rear seats. During normal driving situations, the 3-point seatbelt does not operate the Emergency Locking Retractor. It rather naturally extends along with passengers' easy motion, while holding passengers' body in position.

  However, the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) automatically operates in abrupt stopping, sharp turning, or collision.
- Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR)

  The Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) is to provide the child restraint system with better protection. The front passenger's seat and the rear seats are equipped with the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). You can use the Automatic Locking Retractor mode during normal driving situations. When the child restraint system is installed, switch the system to the ALR mode.

### *Lap/shoulder belt*




**To fasten your seat belt:**

Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and move with you. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

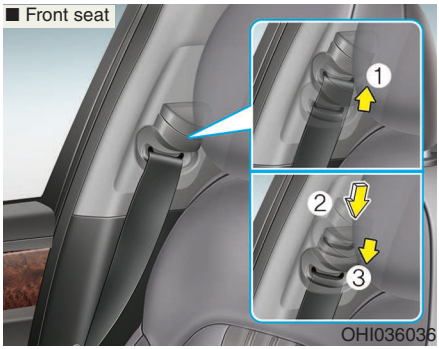
### *i* Information

**If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.**

### Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the four different positions for maximum comfort and safety.

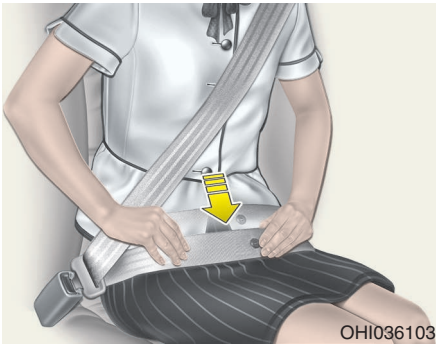
The shoulder portion should be adjusted so it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.




To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

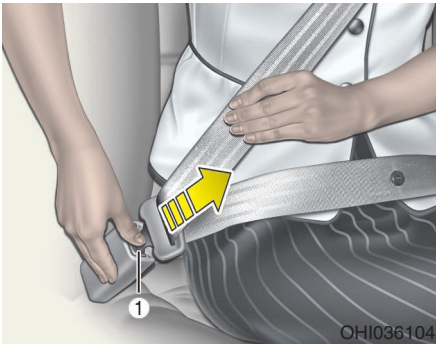
Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.




**⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:**

- **Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.**
- **Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.**
- **Always position the shoulder belt anchor into locked position at the appropriate height.**
- **Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.**

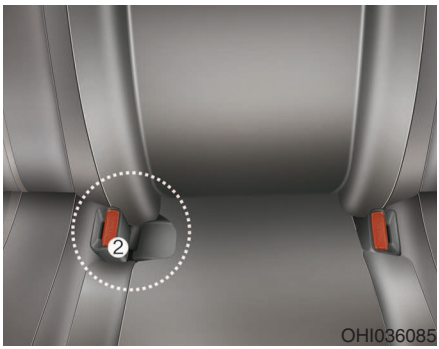



**To release your seat belt:**

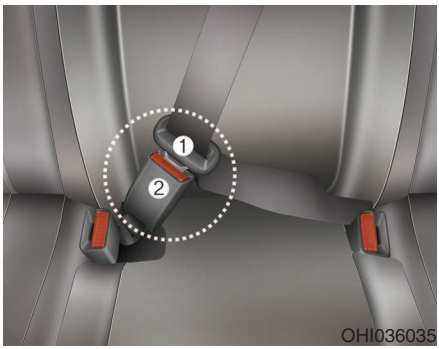
Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle.

When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

### *Rear center seat belt*




1. Take out the buckle (2), which is stored between the seat/seatback cushions.




2. Insert the metal plate (1) into the buckle (2), until it clicks.

   You can make sure its secure fastening by pulling the seatbelt webbing. The buckle with ‘CENTER’ mark should be used for the 3-point seatbelt.

3. Restore the buckle between the seat/seatback cushion after unfastening the seatbelt.

### *Pre-tensioner seat belt (Driver and front passenger)*

#### Retractor Pre-tensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's Pre-tensioner Seat Belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the air bags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Pre-Tensioner Seat Belts (retractor pre-tensioner seat belt and emergency fastening device) that malfunction may not protect you properly during an accident. Take the following precautions:**

- **Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted. A loose or twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything near the buckle. This may adversely affect the buckle and cause it to function improperly.**
- **Always replace your pre-tensioners after activation or an accident.**
- **NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pre-tensioners yourself. This must be done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.**

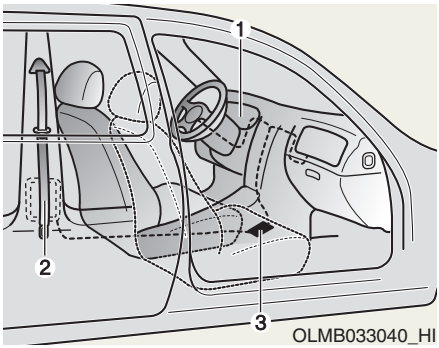
**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt (retractor pre-tensioner seat belt and emergency fastening device) assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt (retractor pre-tensioner seat belt and emergency fastening device) mechanism deploy during a collision, the pre-tensioner becomes hot and can burn you.**

***NOTICE***

**Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt (retractor pre-tensioner seat belt and emergency fastening device) system.**

**Therefore, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**




The Pre-Tensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module

### Information

**The sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre–tensioner seat belts. The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, and then it should turn off.**

**If the pre-tensioner is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if the SRS air bag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate, stays illuminated or illuminates when the vehicle is being driven, we recommend the pre-tensioner seat belts and/or SRS air bags be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

### Information

- **Both the driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollovers (if equipped with rollover sensor).**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

## Pre-Active Seat belt (PSB) (if equipped)

The purpose of the pre-active seat belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is sensed, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is sensed.

**NOTICE**

**The pre-active seat belt is a supplementary system. The pre-active seat belt activates only when the passenger is wearing his/her seat belt.**

The pre-active seat belt warning will turn on if there is a problem with your pre-active seat belt.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products if the warning message comes on while the vehicle is in motion. When the PSB warning message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate.

In order to maximize the safety of the passenger, the pre-active seat belt system operates as below.

- Full retraction

  The seat belt is tightened when:

  - Emergency braking situation occurs
  - Losing control of the vehicle
  - The vehicle senses a collision
  - Driving on a slippery frozen road
- Slack removal

  Tightens a loose seat belt if vehicle speed is over 15 km/h (9.3 mph).
- Belt parking

  Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

## Additional seat belt safety precautions

### *Seat belt use during pregnancy*

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed between your breasts and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of the belly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should NEVER place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.**

### *Seat belt use and children*

#### Infant and small children

Most countries have child restraint laws which require children to travel in approved child restraint devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of child restraints differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and child restraints must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat. For more information refer to the "Child Restraint Systems" in this chapter.

**⚠ WARNING**

**ALWAYS properly restrain infants and small children in a child restraint appropriate for the child's height and weight.**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, NEVER hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. The violent forces created during an accident will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior of the vehicle.**

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standard of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint Systems" in this chapter.

### Larger children

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat must always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system and/or seat belts in the rear seat.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always make sure larger children's seat belts are worn and properly adjusted.**
- **NEVER allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.**
- **Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.**

### *Seat belt use and injured people*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

### *One person per belt*

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

### *Do not lie down*

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**
- **Driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

### *Periodic inspection*

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

### *Keep belts clean and dry*

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

### *When to replace seat belts*

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

# CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

## Children always in the rear

Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. **Even with air bags, children can be seriously injured or killed.** Children too large for a child restraint must use the seat belts provided.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always properly restrain children in the rear seats of the vehicle.**

**Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH.**

Most countries have child restraint laws which require children to travel in approved child restraint devices. The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of child restraints differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child restraint systems must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country.

Child restraint systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by lap belt or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a top-tether anchorage and/or ISOFIX lower anchorage in the rear seats of the vehicle.

### *Child Restraint System (CRS) always in the rear*

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rear-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the rear seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.

**⚠ WARNING**

**An improperly secured child restraint can increase the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH in an accident. Always take the following precautions when using a child restraint system:**

- **NEVER install a child or infant restraint in the front passenger's seat.**
- **Always properly secure the child restraint to a rear seat of the vehicle.**
- **Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the child restraint.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, we recommend an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products check the child restraint system, seat belts, ISOFIX lower anchorages and top-tether anchorages.**

## Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a CRS for your child, always:

- Make sure the CRS has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.
- Select a child restraint based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a child restraint that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the child restraint system.

### *Child restraint system types*

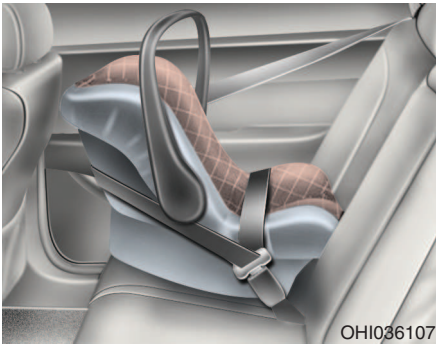
There are three main types of child restraint systems: rear-facing seats, forward-facing seats, and booster seats. They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.

#### Rear-facing child restraints

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER install a child or infant restraint in the front passenger's seat.**

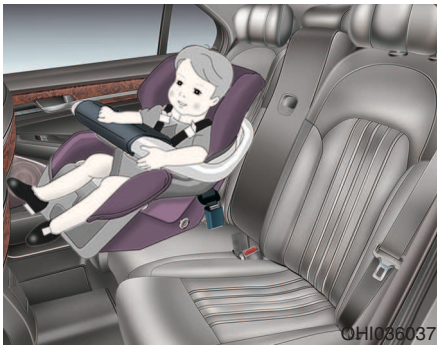
**Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.**




A rear-facing child restraint provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the restraint and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under age one must always ride in a rear-facing child restraint. There are different types of rear-facing child restraints: infant-only seats can only be used rear-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 child restraints typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using restraints in the rear-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the child restraint's manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rear-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a forward-facing child restraint with a harness.




### Forward-facing child restraints

A forward-facing child restraint provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing child restraint with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your child restraint's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a booster seat.

### Booster seats

A booster seat is a restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snug across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver.

## Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Before installing your child restraint always:**

- **Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**
- **Read and follow the instructions regarding child restraint systems in this manual.**

**Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a child seat (as described in the child seat system manual), the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.**

After selecting a proper child restraint and checking that the child restraint fits properly in the rear of this vehicle, you are ready to install the child restraint according to the manufacturer's instruction. There are three general steps in installing the seat properly:

- **Properly secure the child restraint to the vehicle.** All child restraints must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether anchorage and/or ISOFIX lower anchorage (if equipped).
- **Make sure the child restraint is firmly secured.** After installing a child restraint to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A child restraint secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.
- **Secure the child in the child restraint.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A child restraint in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the child restraint.**

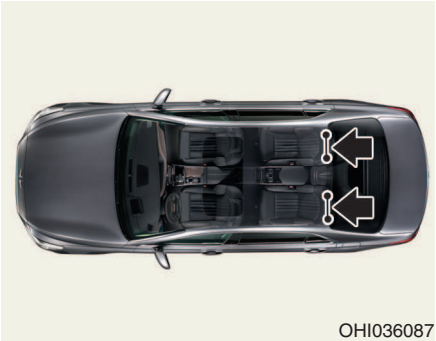
### *ISOFIX lower anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorages system) for children (if equipped)*

The ISOFIX system holds a child restraint during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the child restraint easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your child restraint. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the child restraint to the rear seats.

Lower anchors are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a child restraint with ISOFIX attachments. (An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R 44.)

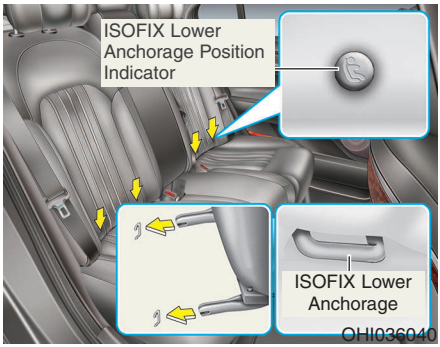
The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint with its attachments for the ISOFIX lower anchorages.




ISOFIX lower anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration. There are no ISOFIX lower anchorages provided for the center rear seating position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not attempt to install a child restraint system using ISOFIX lower anchorages in the rear center seating position. There are no ISOFIX lower anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages can damage the anchorages which may break or fail in a collision resulting in serious injury or death.**




The ISOFIX lower anchorages position indicator symbols are located on the left and right rear seat backs to identify the position of the ISOFIX lower anchorages in your vehicle (see arrows in illustration).

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX lower anchorages as well as a corresponding top-tether anchorage on the back side of the rear seats.

(CRS with universal approval to ECE-R44 need to be fixed additionally with a top-tether strap connected to the corresponding top-tether anchorage point on the back side of the rear seats.)

ISOFIX lower anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions.

### *Securing a child restraint with the "ISOFIX Anchorages System"*

To install a ISOFIX-compatible child restraint in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

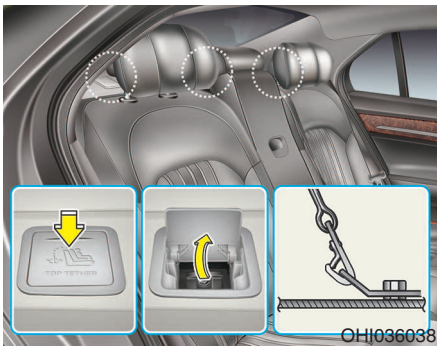
1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX lower anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child restraint and the ISOFIX lower anchorages.
3. Place the child restraint on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX lower anchorages according to the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer.
4. Follow the child restraint instructions for properly adjusting and tightening the lower attachments on the child restraint to the ISOFIX lower anchorages.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:**

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your child restraint system.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one child restraint to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the child restraint.**

### *Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system*




Child restraint hook holders are located on the package tray.

1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.

   For vehicles with adjustable headrest, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the child restraint seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether strap:**

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your child restraint system.**
- **NEVER attach more than one child restraint to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the top-tether strap to anything other than the correct ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**
- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.**

  **Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

## *Child Seat Restraint for Vehicle ISOFIX Positions – For Europe*

| Mass Group | Size Class | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX Positions | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1st | 2nd row | | |
| | | | Passenger | Outboard Left | Center | Outboard Right |
| Carrycot | F | ISO/L1 | X | X | X | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | - | X | - | X |
| 0 : UP to 10kg | E | ISO/R1 | - | IL | - | IL |
| 0+ : UP to 13kg | E | ISO/R1 | - | IL | - | IL |
| | D | ISO/R2 | - | IL | - | IL |
| | C | ISO/R3 | - | IL | - | IL |
| I : 9 to 18kg | D | ISO/R2 | - | IL | - | IL |
| | C | ISO/R3 | - | IL | - | IL |
| | B | ISO/F2 | - | IUF, IL | - | IUF, IL |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | - | IUF, IL | - | IUF, IL |
| | A | ISO/F3 | - | IUF, IL | - | IUF, IL |

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

* Both ISO/R2 and ISO/R3 are able to be set up only at the foremost position of the passenger seat.
* ISOFIX child restraint system size classes and fixtures

A - ISO/F3: Full-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 720mm)

B - ISO/F2: Reduced-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650mm)

B1 - ISO/F2X: Reduced-Height Second Version Back Surface Shape Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650mm)

C - ISO/R3: Full-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

D - ISO/R2: Reduced-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

E - ISO/R1: Infant-Size Rearward-Facing CRS

F - ISO/L1: Left Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

G - ISO/L2: Right Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

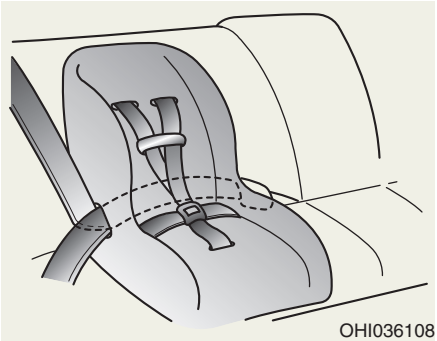
### *Securing a child restraint with a lap/shoulder belt*

When not using the ISOFIX anchorages system, all child restraints must be secured to a vehicle rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

**⚠ WARNING**

**ALWAYS place a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of the vehicle.**

**Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.**




**Installing a child restraint with a lap/shoulder belt**

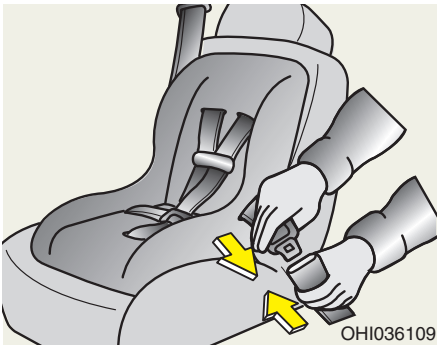
To install a child restraint system on the rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions.

   Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

**i Information**

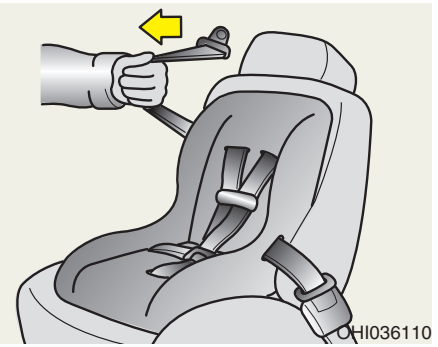
**When using the rear center seat belt, you should also refer to the "3-point Rear Center Seat Belt" section in this chapter.**

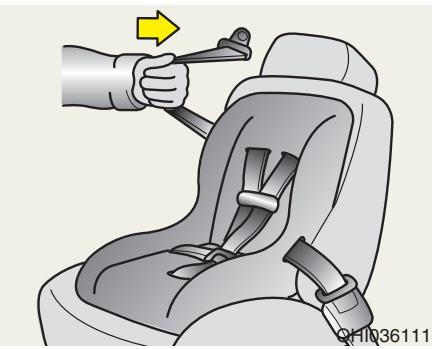



2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.

### Information

**Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.**




3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the child restraint system while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the child restraint system to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your CRS manufacturer instructs or recommends you use a ISOFIX top-tether anchorage with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 2-54.

To remove the child restraint, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the restraint and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

### *Child Seat Restraint Suitability for Seat Position using the Seat Belt - For Europe*

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children.

When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

5 Person (Rear power and bench seat)

| Mass group | | Seating position | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Front Passenger Outboard | Second Row | | |
| | | | Outboard Left | Center | Outboard Right |
| Group 0 (0 - 9 months) | up to 10 kg | X | U | U | U |
| Group 0+ (0 - 2 years) | up to 13 kg | X | U | U | U |
| Group I (9 months - 4 years) | 9 to 18 kg | X | U | U | U |
| Group II (15 to 25 kg) | 15 to 25 kg | X | U | U | U |
| Group III (22 to 36 kg) | 22 to 36 kg | X | U | U | U |

4 Person (Rear power seat)

| Mass group | | Seating position | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Front Passenger Outboard | Second Row | | |
| | | | Outboard Left | Center | Outboard Right |
| Group 0 (0 - 9 months) | up to 10 kg | X | U | U | U |
| Group 0+ (0 - 2 years) | up to 13 kg | X | U | U | U |

U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group, for Passenger Seat seat back angle should be at its forwardmost position.

UF : Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

L : Suitable for particular child restranints given on attached list. Theses restraints may be of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" catagories.

B : Built-in restraint approved for this mass group.

X : Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

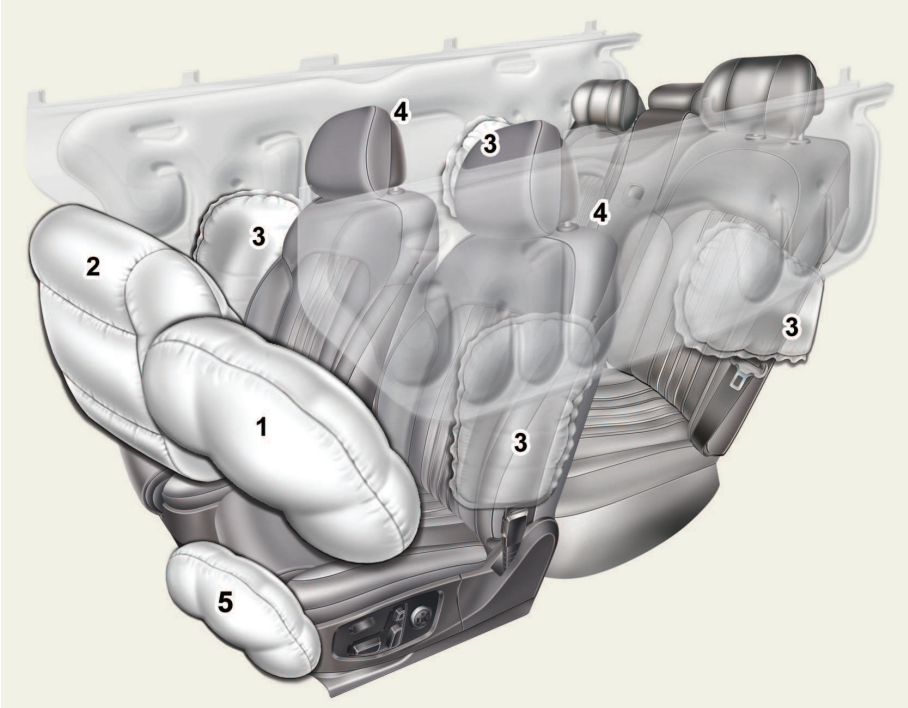
**⚠ WARNING**

**We recommend that a child restraint seat be installed in the rear seat, even if the front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position. To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger's air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a child restraint seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.**

***Child Seat List***

| Name | Serial | Approval No. |
|---|---|---|
| Maxi Cosi Cabrioflx | 2251394 | 4443517 |
| Besafe iZi Kid X3 ISOfix | 533122 | R44 04200 |
| Römer King II L3 | 6177 | E11 041578 |
| Römer Dou | 00.419.994 | 4301133 |
| Maxi Cosi FamilyFix & Pearl | Pearl : 184066<br>FamilyFix : 363000 | 43908 |
| Römer KidFix XP | 1000005 | E1 04301312 |

# AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM




**The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

OHI036041

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag
4. Curtain air bag
5. Driver's knee air bag

This vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Air Bag System for the driver's seat, front passenger's seats and/or rear seats.

The front air bags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these air bags to provide protection, the seat belts must be worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, but do not replace them. Also, air bags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.

**⚠ WARNING**

**AIR BAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

**ALWAYS use seat belts and child restraints - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with air bags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly belted or not wearing your seat belt when the air bag inflates.**

**NEVER place a child in any child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. An inflating air bag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.**

**ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**

**All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the engine is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**

**You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags or lean against the door or center console.**

**Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle. It is recommended that drivers allow at least 25 cm (10 in) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.**

## Where are the air bags?

### *Driver's and passenger's front air bags*

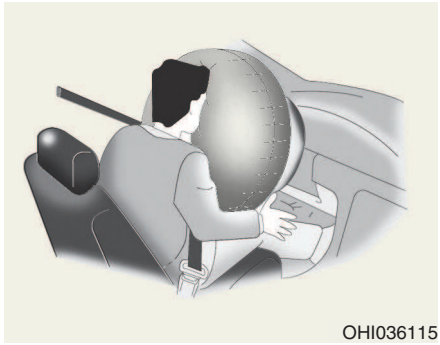
Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The SRS consists of air bags which are located in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The air bags are labeled with the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the pad covers.

■ Driver's front air bag

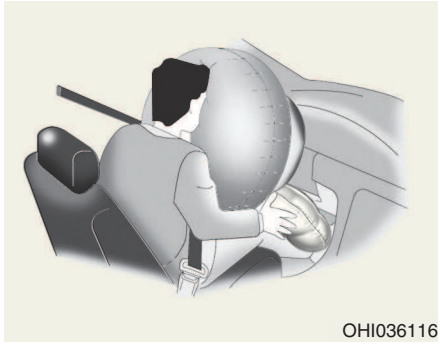
OHI036043



OHI036115

■ Driver's knee air bag

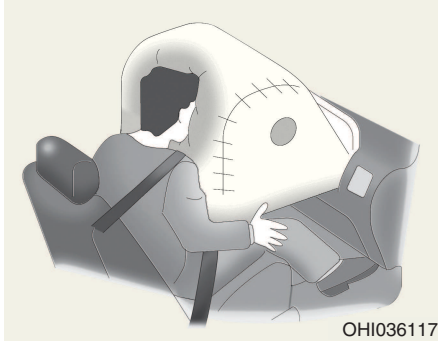
OHI036044



OHI036116

■ Passenger's front air bag

OHI036045



OHI036117

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passengers with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

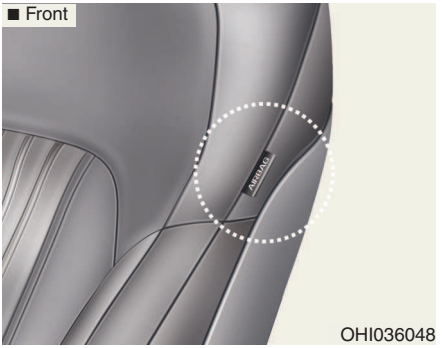
**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating front air bags, take the following precautions:**

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **Never lean against the door or center console.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the dashboard.**
- **Do not allow the passenger to ride in the front seat when the front passenger's air bag OFF indicator is illuminated.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**

### *Side air bags*

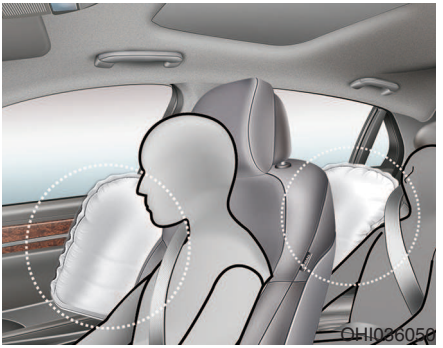
■ Front




OHI036048

■ Rear

OHI036049



OHI036058

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front and outboard rear seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front and outboard rear passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side air bag, take the following precautions:**

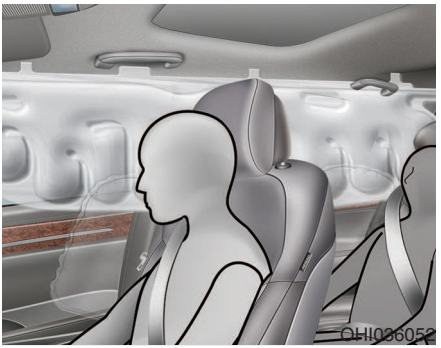
- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers. This could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**
- **Do not cause impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position or this may cause the side air bags to inflate.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Curtain air bags*




Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and impact.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain air bags on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

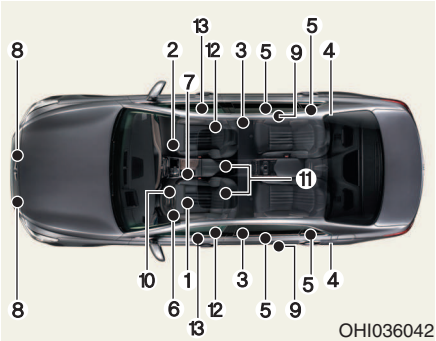
The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain air bags, take the following precautions:**

- **All seat occupants must wear seat belts at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Properly secure child restraints as far away from the door as possible.**
- **Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.**
- **Do not open or repair the side curtain air bags.**

## How does the air bags system operate?




The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side air bag modules
4. Curtain air bag modules
5. Side impact sensor (acceleration type)
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM) /Rollover sensor (if equipped)
8. Front impact sensors
9. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
10. Driver's knee air bag module
11. Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckle sensors. (if equipped)
12. Anchor pretensioner (if equipped)
13. Side impact sensor (pressure type)

The SRSCM continually monitors SRS components except for buckle sensor while the engine start/stop button is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

### SRS warning light

The SRS (Supplement Restraint System) air bag warning light on the instrument panel displays the air bag symbol depicted in the illustration. The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light indicates that there is a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection (if equipped with rollover sensor).

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your SRS malfunctions, the air bag may not inflate properly during an accident increasing the risk of serious injury or death.**

**If any of the following conditions occur, your SRS is malfunctioning:**

- **The light does not turn on for approximately six seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately six seconds.**
- **The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the engine is running.**

**We recommend that an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.**

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the front air bags, at the time and with the force needed.

The front air bags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side air bags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Air bags inflate in the event of a severe frontal or side collision to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate. Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle impacts during a collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.

- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain air bags will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

  When a rollover is detected, curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)
- To help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, the rapid air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.
- In general, airbag operation is mainly determined by colliding intensity and colliding directions. Those are the key factors for the airbag sensors to generate the electrical signals for airbag operations.
- The airbags operate in accordance with colliding intensity, direction, and density/hardness of the colliding object. However, the airbags do not always deploy in all collisions.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the air bag. An air bag needs about 25 cm (10 in.) of space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers allow at least 25 cm (10 in.) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

■ Driver's front air bag (1)

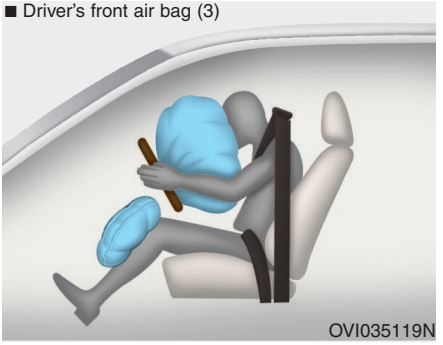
When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

■ Driver's front air bag (2)

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

■ Driver's front air bag (3)




■ Passenger's front air bag

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the passenger's air bag inflates:**

- **Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's air bag is located.**
- **Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.**

## What to expect after an air bag inflates

After a frontal or side air bag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Air bag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer. Curtain air bags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After an air bag inflates, take the following precautions:**

- **Open your windows and doors as soon as possible after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating air bag.**
- **Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating air bag may be very hot.**
- **Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.**
- **We recommend that an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products replace the air bag immediately after deployment. Air bags are designed to be used only once.**

### *Noise and smoke from inflating air bag*

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing problems after an air bag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

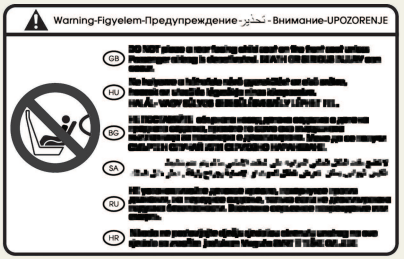
Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

### *Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat*

■ Type A

OYDESA2042

■ Type B




OLM034310_HI

Never install a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. An inflating air bag can forcefully strike a child or restraint resulting in serious or fatal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**

## Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Air bags are not designed to inflate in every collision.)

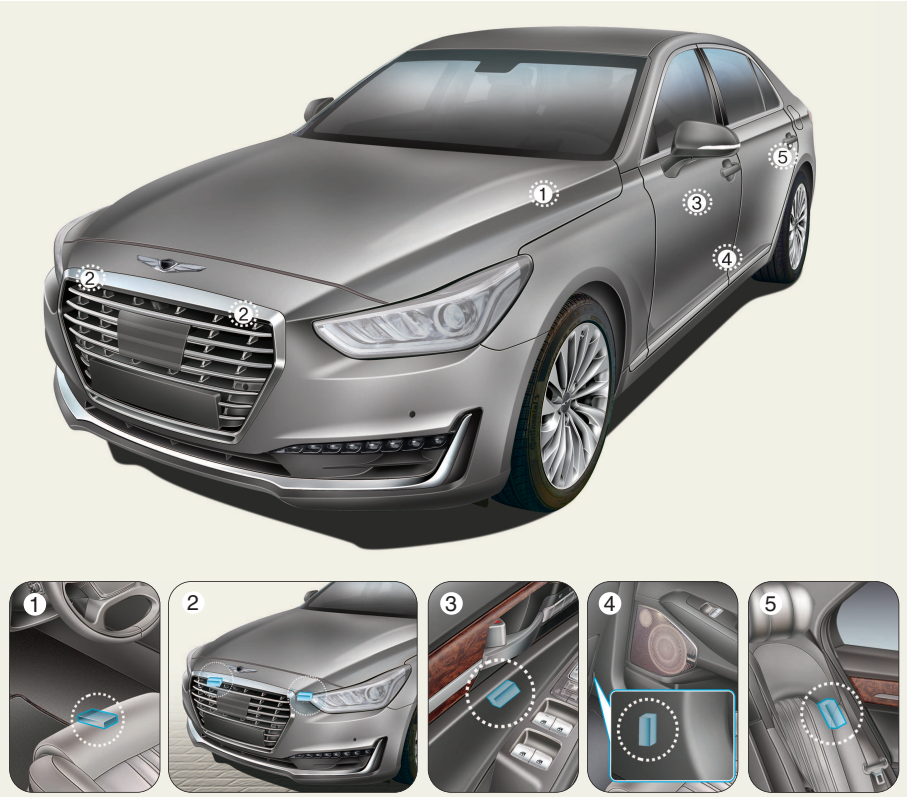
There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection. These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an air bag should have inflated.

### *Air bag collision sensors*

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of an air bag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:**

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**
- **Do not perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the air bags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy when they should.**
- **Do not install bumper guards or replace the bumper with a non-genuine part. This may adversely affect the collision and air bag deployment performance.**
- **Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position, when the vehicle is being towed to prevent inadvertent air bag deployment.**
- **We recommend that all air bag repairs are conducted by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**



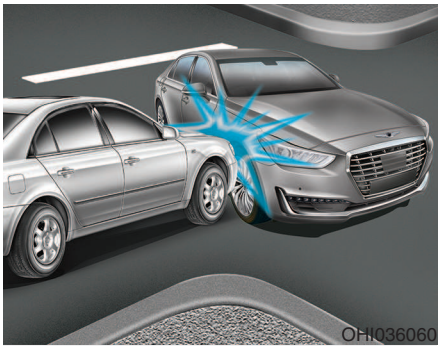

OHI036078/OHI036054/OHI036055/OHI036056/OHI036057/OHI036058

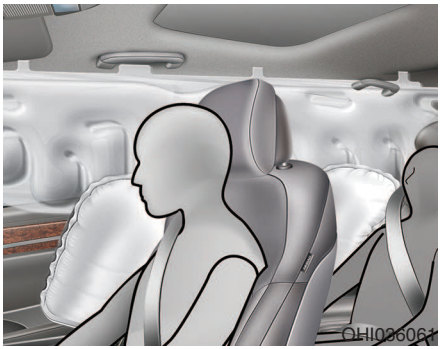
1. SRS control module /Rollover sensor
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side Impact Sensor (Front door)
4. Side Impact Sensor (B-Pillar)
5. Side Impact Sensor (C-Pillar)

### *Air bag inflation conditions*

**Front air bag**

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.




**Side and curtain air bags**

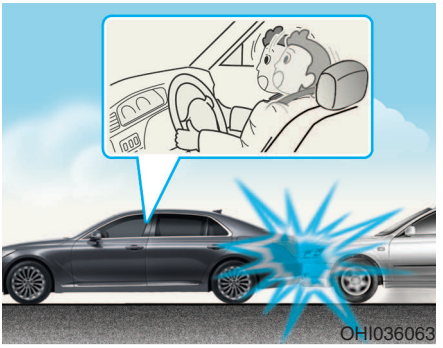
Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's air bags are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor), but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

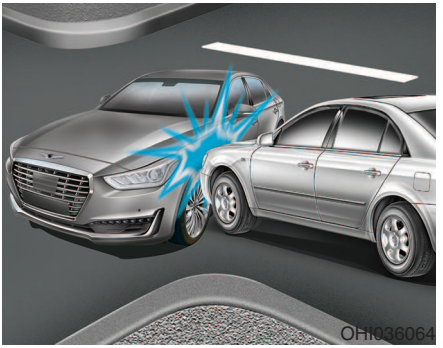
If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

### *Air bag non-inflation conditions*

In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.

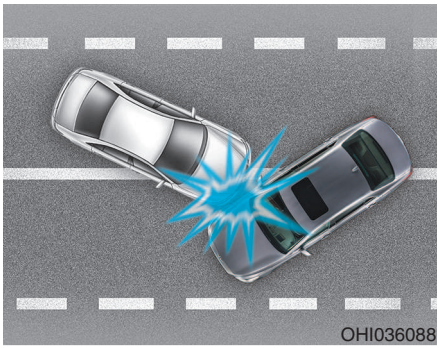



Front air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not provide any additional benefit.

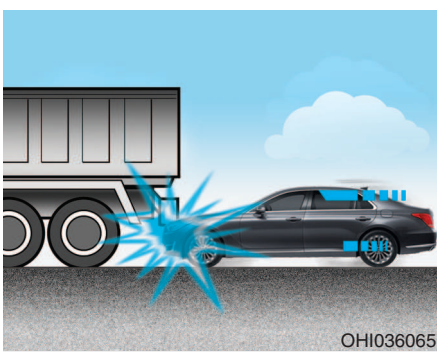



Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

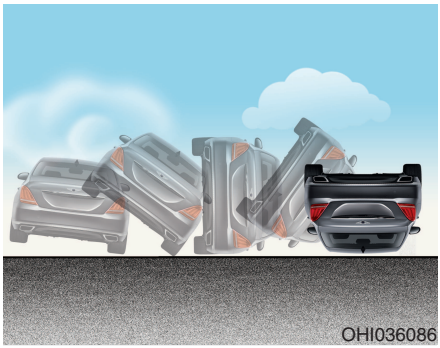
However, side and curtain air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.




In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.




Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “underride” collisions.



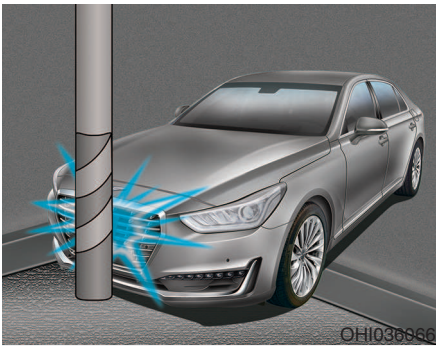

Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

### Information - With rollover sensor

**Front air bags do not inflate in rollover accidents. However, side impact and curtain air bags may inflate in a rollover, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.**

### Information - Without rollover sensor

**Air bags do not inflate in rollover accidents because vehicle cannot detect rollover accident. However, side impact and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over following(after) side impact collision.**




Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

## SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails be performed by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death take the following precautions:**

- **Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.**
- **Do not place objects over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Clean the air bag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **We recommend that inflated air bags be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. Consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.**

## Additional safety precautions

**Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

**Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash

**Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

**Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.

**Do not cause impact to the doors.** Impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position may cause the air bags to inflate.

### *Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag equipped vehicle*

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

## Air bag warning labels (if equipped)

OHI036067L/OHI036068L/OHI036069/OHI036070

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

# Convenient features of your vehicle


Accessing your vehicle ..... 3-4
Smart key ..... 3-4
Door locks ..... 3-9
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle ..... 3-9
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle ..... 3-10
Auto door lock/unlock features ..... 3-12
Child-protector rear door locks ..... 3-12
Theft-alarm system ..... 3-13
Seat position memory system ..... 3-14
Easy access function ..... 3-16
Steering wheel ..... 3-17
Electric power steering (EPS) ..... 3-17
Tilt steering / Telescope steering ..... 3-17
Heated steering wheel ..... 3-18
Horn ..... 3-18
Mirrors ..... 3-19
Inside rearview mirror ..... 3-19
Outside rearview mirror ..... 3-20
Reverse parking aid function ..... 3-22
Windows ..... 3-23
Power windows ..... 3-23
Remote window opening/closing function ..... 3-27
Sunroof ..... 3-28
Sliding the sunroof ..... 3-28
Tilting the sunroof ..... 3-29
Sunshade ..... 3-30
Resetting the sunroof ..... 3-30
Hood ..... 3-31
Opening the hood ..... 3-31
Closing the hood ..... 3-31

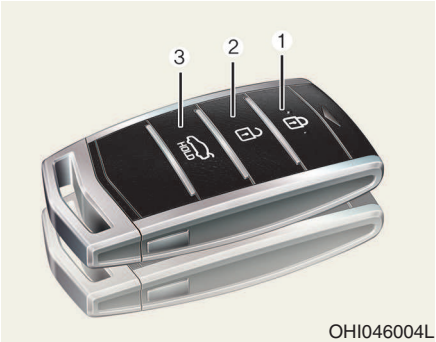
Trunk ..... 3-32
Non-Powered trunk ..... 3-32
Power trunk ..... 3-33
Emergency trunk safety release ..... 3-37
Smart trunk ..... 3-38
Fuel filler door ..... 3-41
Opening the fuel filler door ..... 3-41
Closing the fuel filler door ..... 3-41
Emergency fuel filler lid release ..... 3-43
Instrument cluster ..... 3-44
Instrument cluster control ..... 3-45
Gauges ..... 3-46
Odometer ..... 3-48
Warning and indicator lights ..... 3-49
LCD display messages ..... 3-60
LCD display ..... 3-74
LCD display control ..... 3-74
LCD modes ..... 3-75
Trip computer ..... 3-83
Trip modes ..... 3-83
Head-up display ..... 3-86
Light ..... 3-89
Exterior lights ..... 3-89
Smart high beam ..... 3-91
Welcome system ..... 3-97
Interior lights ..... 3-98
Wipers and washers ..... 3-102
Windshield wipers ..... 3-102
Windshield washers ..... 3-104
Driver assist system ..... 3-105
Rear view camera ..... 3-105
Parking assist system ..... 3-106
Around View Monitoring (AVM) system ..... 3-110

# Convenient features of your vehicle


Defroster .....3-112
Rear window defroster .....3-112
Automatic climate control system .....3-113
Automatic heating and air conditioning.....3-114
Manual heating and air conditioning.....3-115
System operation.....3-126
System maintenance.....3-128
Windshield defrosting and defogging.....3-130
Climate control additional features .....3-133
Clean air .....3-133
Automatic ventilation.....3-133
Sunroof inside air recirculation .....3-133
Setting the climate control system on the DIS navigation system monitor .....3-133
Storage compartment.....3-135
Center console storage.....3-135
Rear console storage .....3-136
Glove box.....3-136
Sunglass holder .....3-137
Cellular phone holder .....3-137
Wireless cellular phone charging system .....3-138
Interior features .....3-140
Ashtray .....3-140
Cup holder .....3-140
Sunvisor .....3-142
Rear vanity mirror .....3-142
Power outlet .....3-143
Clock .....3-144
Clothes hanger .....3-145
Bag hanger .....3-145
Floor mat anchor(s) .....3-145
Rear curtain .....3-146
Rear door window curtain .....3-147
Luggage net holder.....3-148

# ACCESSING YOUR VEHICLE

## Smart key

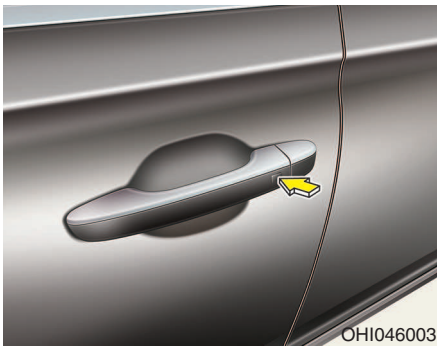


OHI046004L

1. Door Lock
2. Door Unlock
3. Trunk Unlock

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock a door (and trunk) and even start the engine.

### *Locking*


OHI046003

To lock :

1. Close all doors, engine hood and trunk.
2. Either press the door handle button or press the Door Lock button (1) on the smart key.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink. Also, the outside rearview mirror will fold, if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position.
4. Make sure the doors are locked by checking the position of the door lock button inside the vehicle.

### *i* Information

**The door handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 inches) from the outside door handle.**

Even though you press the outside door handle button, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for three seconds if any of the following occur:

- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
- The Engine Start/Stop button is in ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the trunk is open.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could press the Engine Start/Stop button and may operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.**

### *Unlocking*

To unlock:

1. Carry the Smart Key.
2. Either grab the outside door handle or press the Door Unlock button (2) on the smart key.
3. The doors will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times. Also, the outside rearview mirror will unfold, if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position.

#### Information

- **The door handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 inches) from the outside door handle. Other people can also open the doors without the smart key in possession.**
- **After unlocking the doors, the doors will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.**

### *Trunk opening*

To open:

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Either press the trunk handle button or press and hold the Trunk Unlock button (3) on the smart key for more than one second.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.

Once the trunk is opened and then closed, the trunk will lock automatically.

#### Information

**The trunk handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m (28 inches) from the trunk handle.**

#### Information

**The power trunk (if equipped) can be operated when the engine is not running. However, the power trunk consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate consecutively (more than approximately 10 times).**

### *Start-up*

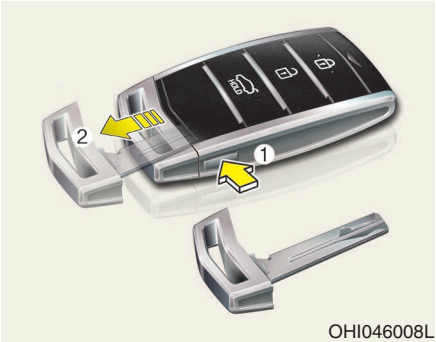
You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information, refer to the Engine Start/Stop button in chapter 5.

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damaging the smart key:**

- **Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid and fire. If the inside of the smart key gets damp (due to drinks or moisture), or is heated, internal circuit may malfunction, excluding the car from the warranty.**
- **Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.**
- **Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.**

### *Mechanical key*



OHI046008L

If the Smart Key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the door by using the mechanical key.

Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2). Insert the mechanical key into the key hole on the door.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

### *Loss of a smart key*

A maximum of three Smart Keys including Card Type Smart Key can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining keys to your authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

### *Smart key precautions*

The smart key will not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a cellular phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- Pay extreme caution. The doors (including the trunk) may get locked/unlocked by unintentionally pressing the smart key buttons, when you keep the smart key with other key chains.

When the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phones normal operational signals.

This is especially important when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your mobile phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and always try to maintain an adequate distance between the two devices.

## Information

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.**

**NOTICE**

**Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**

### *Restrictions in handling keys*

When leaving keys with parking lot and valet attendants, the following procedures will ensure your vehicle's trunk and glove box compartment can only be opened with the mechanical key.

To lock:

1. Remove the mechanical key from the Smart Key.
2. Unlock the glove box by using the mechanical key, then open it.
3. Set the Trunk Lid Control button to the LOCK position (button pressed).
4. Close and lock the glove box using the mechanical key.
5. Leave the Smart Key with the attendant and keep the mechanical key with you.

The Smart Key can only be used to start the engine and operate door locks.

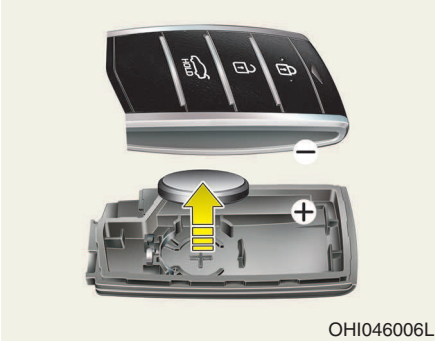
To unlock:

1. Open the glove box with the mechanical key.
2. Set the Trunk Lid Control button to the UNLOCK position (button not pressed).

In this position the trunk lid will open with the Trunk Lid button or the Smart Key.

### *Battery replacement*

If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.




Battery Type: CR2032

To replace the battery:

1. Pry open the rear cover of the smart key with a flat-head driver.
2. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
3. Reinstall the rear cover of the smart key.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

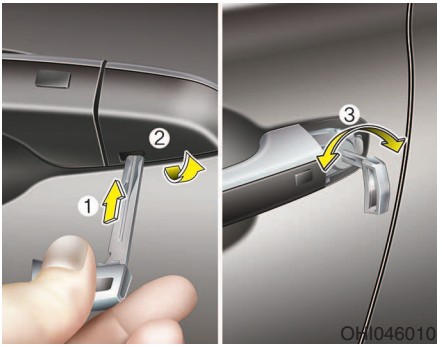
### Information

**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) and regulation.**

# DOOR LOCKS

## Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

### *Mechanical key*




First, remove the cover (1~2), and then turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock (3).

If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically.

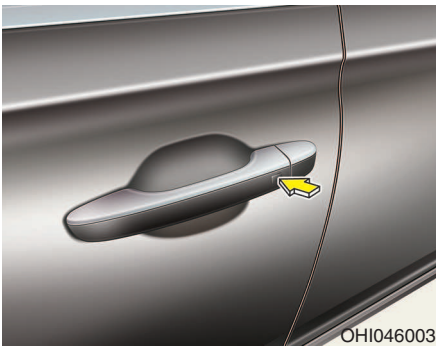
Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

**NOTICE**

**When removing the cover, be careful not to scratch the vehicle or lose the cover.**

### *Smart key*



To lock the doors, press the button on the outside door handle while carrying the smart key with you or press the door lock button on the smart key.

To unlock the doors, grab the outside door handle while carrying the smart key with you or press the door unlock button on the smart key.

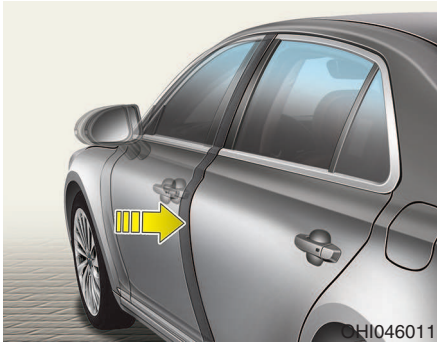
Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

## Information

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

### *Power door latch (if equipped)*




If a door isn't closed completely but is closed to the first detent position, the door will close automatically.

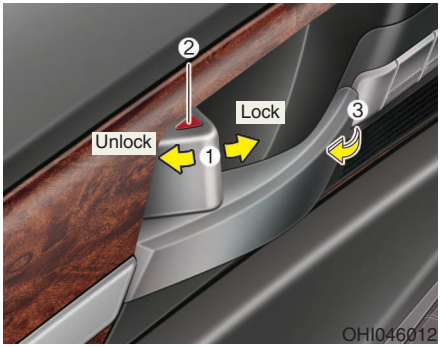
**NOTICE**

**To reduce the risk of injury:**

- **Before closing the door, check there are no obstructions in the path of the door.**
- **Keep your fingers away from the edge of the door or they may become trapped when the power door latch operates.**

## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

### *With the door lock button*




- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the "Unlock" position. The red mark (2) on the door lock button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the "Lock" position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward.
- If the inner door handle of the driver's (or front passenger's) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button is unlocked and door opens.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is open.

## Information

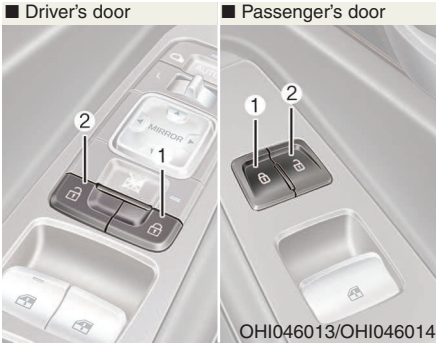
**If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:**

**Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**

**Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.**

**Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.**

### *With the central door lock switch (if equipped)*




When pressing the (🔒) portion (1) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.

When pressing the (🔓) portion (2) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.

If the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock button (1) of the central door lock switch is pressed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Leaving your vehicle unlocked increases the potential risk to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle.**

**To secure your vehicle, while depressing the brake, move the shift lever to the P (Park) position, engage the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.**

## Auto door lock/unlock features

### *Impact sensing door unlock system*

All doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

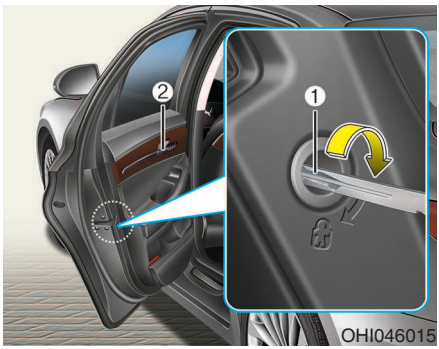
### *Speed sensing door lock system*

All doors will be automatically locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9 mph).

All of the doors will be automatically unlocked after the engine is turned off.

You can activate or deactivate the Auto Door Lock/Unlock features from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. For more information , refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

## Child-protector rear door locks




The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock (1) is in the lock position, the rear door will not open if the inner door handle (2) is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a screwdriver into the hole and turn it to the lock position.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If children accidently open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.**

## THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occurs:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The trunk is opened without using the smart key.
- The engine hood is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the trunk from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by pressing the button on the outside of the door handles with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the trunk, or the hood without using the smart key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the hood, the trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the hood, the trunk, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

### Information

- **Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle when the system is armed, the alarm will be activated.**
- **If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the engine.**
- **When the system is disarmed but a door or trunk is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.**

### Information

OJC040170

**Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:**

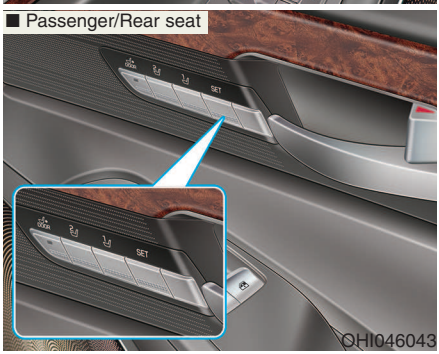
**1. WARNING**

**2. SECURITY SYSTEM**

# SEAT POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Driver's seat

■ Passenger/Rear seat




The Seat Position Memory System is provided to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

1) Driver's seat position

- Seat/Steering wheel/Outside rearview mirror position
- Instrument panel illumination intensity
- Head-Up Display (HUD) position, brightness, and angle

2) Passenger/Rear seat position

- Seat position

**⚠ WARNING**

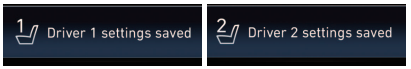
**Never attempt to operate the seat position memory system while the vehicle is moving.**

**This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**

## *i* Information

- **If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.**
- **If the Seat Position Memory System does not operate normally, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Storing memory positions*

1. Move the shift lever into P (Park) while the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position, instrument panel illumination intensity and head-up display height/brightness to the desired position.
3. Press the SET button. The system will beep once and notify you "Press button to save settings"on the LCD display.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
5. 

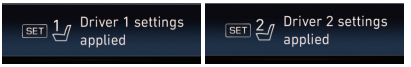
OHI046178L/OHI046179L

   "Driver 1 (or 2) settings saved" will appear on the LCD display.

### Information

**Only the driver's seat position memory appears on the LCD display.**

### *Recalling memory positions*

1. Move the shift lever into P (Park) while the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position, instrument panel illumination intensity and head-up display height/brightness will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. 

OHI046176L/OHI046177L

"Driver 1(or 2) settings is applied" will appear on the LCD display.

### Information

- **While recalling the "1" memory position, pressing the SET or 1 button temporarily stops the adjustment of the recalled memory position. Pressing the 2 button recalls the "2" memory position.**
- **While recalling the "2" memory position, pressing the SET or 2 button temporarily stops the adjustment of the recalled memory position. Pressing the 1 button recalls the "1" memory position.**
- **While recalling the stored positions, pressing one of the control buttons for the driver's seat, outside rearview mirror, steering wheel, instrument panel illumination or head-up display will cause the movement of that component to stop and move in the direction that the control button is pressed.**

## Easy access function

When exiting the vehicle, the steering wheel will move away from the driver and the driver seat will move rearward when the engine is turned off and door is opened. When entering the vehicle, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and the driver seat will move forward when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ACC position.

You can activate or deactivate the Driver easy access function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

The front passenger's seat or a rear passenger's seat moves backward for his/her convenience, when a corresponding door is opened with the DOOR button in the ON position.

# STEERING WHEEL

## Electric power steering (EPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the engine is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you may still steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

**If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light (⊛!) will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel will require increase effort. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

### *i* Information

**The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:**

- **The steering effort may be high immediately after placing the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.**

  **This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or OFF position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise may occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**

## Tilt steering / Telescope steering

Adjust the steering wheel so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.

To change the steering wheel angle and height:

- Move the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Move the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

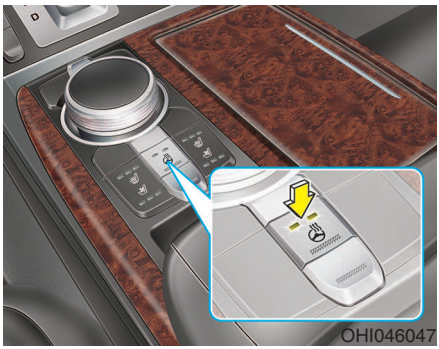
**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER adjust the steering wheel while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the engine is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.**

## Heated steering wheel




When the ignition switch is in the ON position or when the engine is running, press the heated steering wheel button to warm the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

- Each time you push the switch, the temperature setting changes as follows:

OFF → HIGH ( ) → LOW ( )

- When the heated steering wheel switch is pressed to high ( ) :

  The heated steering wheel switch automatically changes to the low position after 30 minutes. You can turn off the heated steering wheel by pressing the switch to the OFF position.
- When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to ON position with the heated steering wheel switch in the high/low position, the heated steering wheel automatically starts in the high position.

**NOTICE**

**Do not install any cover or accessory on the steering wheel. This cover or accessory could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.**

## Horn

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

**NOTICE**

**Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.**

# MIRRORS

## Inside rearview mirror

Before you start driving, adjust the rearview mirror to the center on the view through the rear window.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, cargo area, or behind the rear head-rests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER adjust the mirror while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

### *Electric chromic Mirror (ECM)*

OHI046051L

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the head-lamp of the car behind you in night-time or low light driving conditions.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror. The sensor detects the light level around the vehicle, and automatically adjusts to control the head-lamp glare from vehicles behind you.

Whenever the shift lever is placed in R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

***NOTICE***

**When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.**

## Outside rearview mirror

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The right outside rearview mirror is convex. In some countries, the left outside rearview mirror is also convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or turn your head and look to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass.**
- **If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**

### *Adjusting the rearview mirrors:*

1. Press either the L (driver's side) or R (passenger's side) button (1) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
3. After adjustment, press the L or R button (1) again to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

**NOTICE**

- **The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.**
- **Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand or the motor may be damaged.**

### *Folding/Unfolding the outside rearview mirror*

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

Left (1) : The mirror will unfold.

Right (2) : The mirror will fold.

Center (AUTO) :

The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
- The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession. (if equipped)

**NOTICE**

**The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the engine is not running.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. It could cause motor failure.**

## Reverse parking aid function (if equipped)

When you move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) will rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse.

The position of the outside rearview mirror switch (1) determines whether or not the mirrors will move:

Left/Right :

When either the L (Left) or R (Right) switch is selected, both outside rearview mirrors will move.

Neutral :

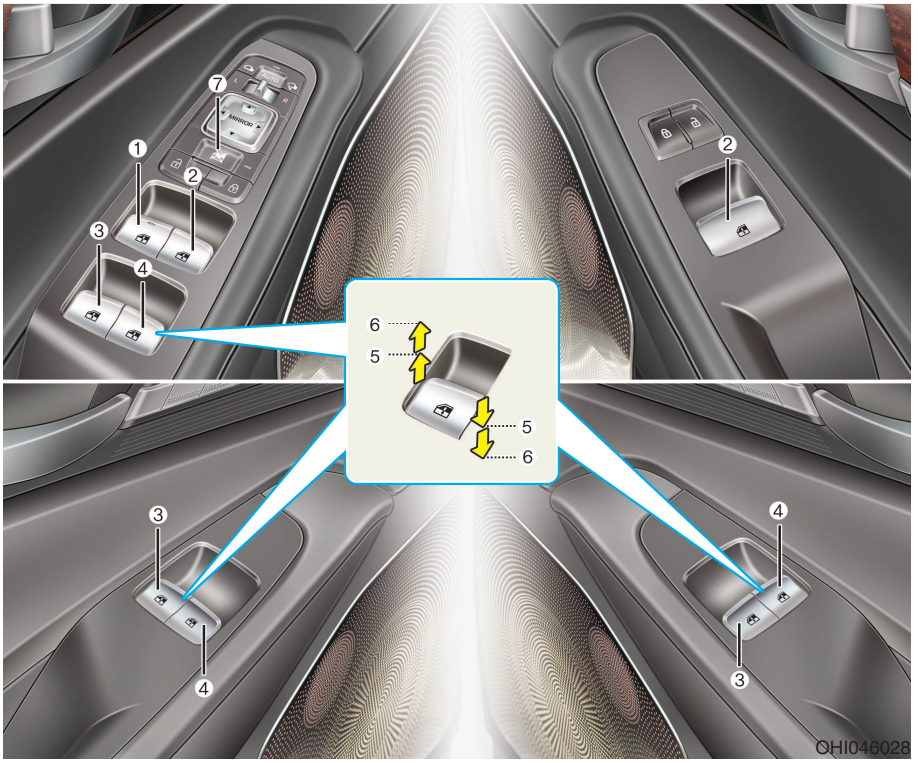
When neither switch is selected, the outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The shift lever is moved to any position except R (Reverse).
- The remote control outside rearview mirror switch is not selected.

# WINDOWS

## Power windows




1. Driver's door power window switch
2. Front passenger's door power window switch
3. Rear door (left) power window switch
4. Rear door (right) power window switch
5. Window opening and closing
6. Automatic power window
7. Power window lock switch

The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock switch which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 30 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is placed in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the Power Windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the windows while driving.**

## *i* Information

- **In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) opened (or partially opened), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is normal and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly close the sunroof.**

### *Window opening and closing*

To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

### *Auto up/down window*

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

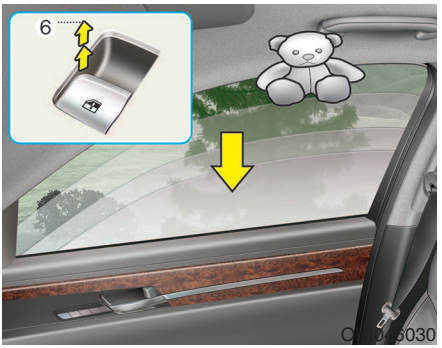
### *To reset the power windows*

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, it is recommended that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Automatic reversal*




If a window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 30 cm (12 inches) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 inch).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

### Information

**The automatic reverse feature is only active when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.**

### WARNING

**Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.**

**Objects less than 4 mm (0.16 inch) in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.**

### *Power window lock switch*

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch. The indicator will be illuminated.

When the power window lock switch is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate the front passenger's power window but cannot operate the rear passengers' power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.**

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.**
- **Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.**

## Remote window opening/ closing function

OHI046001L

You can still control the window movement with the engine turned off by pressing the door lock button (1) for more than 3 seconds. The window moves (up or down), as long as you press the door lock button. The window movement stops, when you release the door lock button. The hazard warning lights blink 3 times, when the window is completely closed.

### Information

- **The remote window opening/ closing function may abruptly stop, when you move away from your vehicle during the operation. Stay in close proximity of your vehicle, while monitoring the window movement.**
- **One of the windows may stop operating, when the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows will keep operating. Thus, you should make sure that all windows are closed, and that the hazard warning lights blink 3 times.**

# SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the Engine Start/ Stop button is in the ON position.

### Information

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After washing the car or after there is rain, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully open, closed, or tilt.**

**Damage to the motor or system components could occur.**

### Information

**The sunroof cannot slide when it is in the tilt position nor can it be tilted while in an open or slide position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

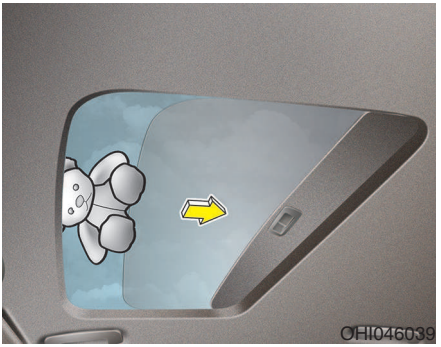
**Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade while driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**

## Sliding the sunroof

Pressing the sunroof control lever backward or forward momentarily to the second detent position completely opens or closes the sunroof even when the switch is released. To stop the sunroof at the desired position while the sunroof is in operation, press the sunroof control lever backward or forward and release the switch.

The sunroof can also be opened or closed by pressing the sunroof control lever backward or forward to the first detent position. But the sunroof opens or closes only when you press the sunroof control lever.

### *Automatic reversal*




If an object or part of the body is detected while the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

## Tilting the sunroof

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward to the second detent. The sunroof will tilt all the way open.

To stop the sunroof tilting at any point, operate the control lever.

To close the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever forward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the sunroof to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.**
- **Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving.**

***NOTICE***

- **Periodically remove dirt accumulation over the sunroof guide rails or between the sunroof and roof panel, which may cause a noise.**
- **Do not attempt to open the sunroof, when a temperature is below the freezing point, or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice. Otherwise, the motor may be damaged. In a cold and wet temperature, the sunroof may not properly operate.**
- **To prevent damage to the sunroof and the motor, do not continuously press the sunroof control lever, after it is fully opened, closed or tilted.**

## Sunshade

The sunshade will automatically open with the glass panel when the glass panel moves. Close it manually if you want it closed.

## Resetting the sunroof

Sunroof needs to be reset if (in the followings)

- Battery is discharged or disconnected or the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected.
- The one-touch sliding function of the sunroof does not normally operate.

1. Turn the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position and close the sunroof completely.
2. Release the control lever.
3. Pull and hold the control lever forward until the sunroof tilts and slightly moves up and down. Then, release the lever.
4. Pull and hold the control lever forward until the sunroof is operated as follows;

   TILT DOWN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE

   Then, release the control lever.

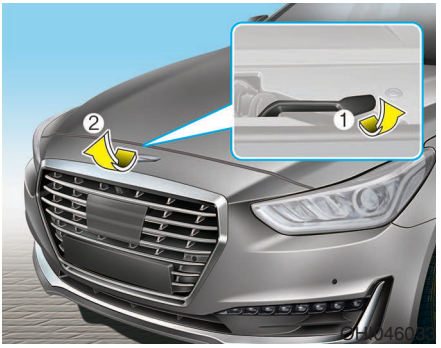
**NOTICE**

**If you do not reset the sunroof when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or related fuse is blown, the sunroof may operate improperly.**

# HOOD

## Opening the hood

1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.




3. Raise the hood slightly, push the secondary latch up (1) inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2). After it has been raised about halfway, it will raise completely by itself.

## Closing the hood

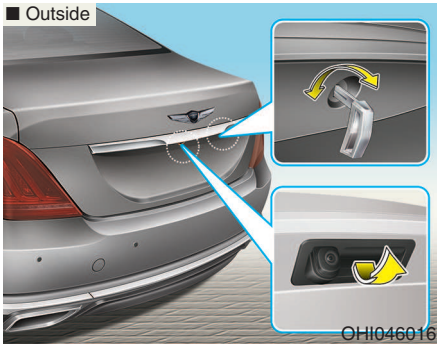
1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the hood halfway (lifted approximately 30cm from the closed position) and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the hood is secure.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before closing the hood, ensure all obstructions are removed from around hood opening.**
- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no hood open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the hood opened may cause a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood in the raised position, as vision is obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the hood could fall or be damaged.**

# TRUNK

## Non-Powered trunk (if equipped)




To open:

1. Do one of the following :
   - Press the smart key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the trunk itself with the Smart Key in your possession.
   - Use the mechanical key.
   - Use the trunk release button.

2. Lift the trunk lid up.

To close:

Lower the trunk lid and press down until it locks.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always keep the trunk lid completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The trunk swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the trunk.**

***NOTICE***

**To prevent damage to the trunk lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the trunk before driving.**

### *i* Information

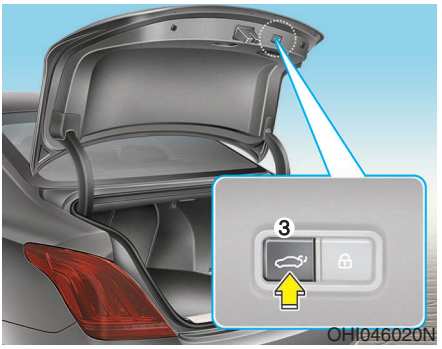
**In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

## Power trunk (if equipped)

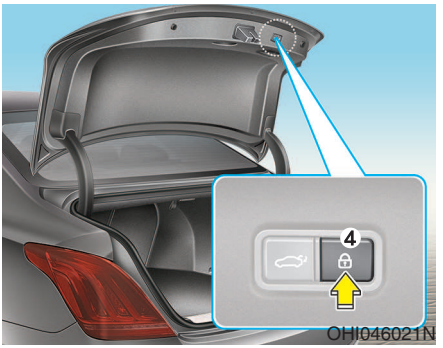
(1) Power Trunk Main Control button

(2) Power Trunk Open button

(3) Power Trunk Close button




(4) Power Trunk Lock button




To open:

Do one of the following :

- Press the smart key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
- Press the Open button (2) on the trunk. You need the smart key in your possession, when all doors are locked.
- Press the Power Trunk Main Control button (1).

To close:

Do one of the following:

- Press the Power Trunk Main Control button (1) until the Power Trunk is closed securely.
- Press the Close button (3) on the trunk.
- Press the Lock button (4) on the trunk while carrying the smart key with all the vehicle's doors closed. All doors will lock and arm the theft alarm system.

If you push a button or switch while the trunk is opening or closing, it could stop moving. Press any button to operate the Power Trunk again.

### Information

The Power Trunk Lock button will not work if you press the button when:

- Any door is open.
- The Engine Start/Stop button is not in the OFF position.
- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.

**WARNING**

**Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children or animals might operate the power trunk that could result in injury to themselves or others, or damage to the vehicle.**

**WARNING**

**Always keep the trunk lid completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.**

**WARNING**

**Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk before opening or closing the Power Trunk. Wait until the trunk is open fully and stopped before loading or unloading cargo from the vehicle.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not close or open the Power Trunk manually. This may cause damage to the Power Trunk. If it is necessary to close or open the Power Trunk manually when the battery is drained or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.**
- **Do not leave the Power Trunk open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.**
- **To prevent damage to the trunk lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the trunk before driving.**

### Information

In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

***Power trunk non-opening or closing conditions:***

- The Power Trunk will not open or close automatically, when the vehicle is moving more than 3 km/h (1.8 mph).
- The Power Trunk can be operated when the engine is not running. However, the Power Trunk operation consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from draining, do not operate it excessively (e.g., more than approximately 10 times repeatedly.)
- Do not modify or repair any part of the Power Trunk by yourself. This must be done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Before jacking up the vehicle to change a tire or repair the vehicle, open the Power Trunk. Do not operate the Power Trunk when the vehicle is raised or this could cause the Power Trunk to operate improperly.

- If there are obstacles such as snow on the Power Trunk, it may not open automatically. After removing the obstacle, try to open it again.

### *Automatic stop and reverse*

If, during power opening or closing, the trunk is blocked by an object or part of someone's body, the power trunk will detect the resistance and it will stop movement or move to the full open position to allow the object to be cleared.

However, if the resistance is weak such as from an object that is thin or soft, or the trunk is near the latched position, the automatic stop and reversal may not detect the resistance and the closing operation will continue. Also, if the Power Trunk is forced by a strong impact, the automatic stop and reversal may operate.

If the automatic stop and reverse feature operates more than twice during one opening or closing operation, the Power Trunk may stop at that position. If this occurs, close the trunk manually and operate the trunk automatically again.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent serious injury and damage take the following precautions when operating the power trunk:**

- **Keep all faces, hands, arms, body parts and other objects away from the path of the power trunk.**
- **Do not intentionally place any body parts or objects in the path of the power trunk to make sure the automatic stop and reversal operates.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power trunk.**

### *To reset the power trunk*

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, or if the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected, reset the Power Trunk as follows:

1. Move the shift lever to the P (Park) position.
2. Close the trunk manually.

If the Power Trunk doesn't work properly after performing the above procedure, have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Trunk lid control button*

OHI046009

When the trunk lid control button is in the UNLOCK (button not pressed) position, the power trunk can be controlled with the power trunk main control button, power trunk open, close button, and the smart key.

When this trunk lid control button is in the LOCK (button pressed) position, the power trunk can be controlled using the mechanical key of the smart key only.

The smart trunk does not operate, when the trunk lid control button is pressed to the LOCK position.

Even though the trunk lid control button is in the LOCK (button pressed) position, the trunk will still be propelled upward by mechanical force if the trunk is manually opened more than 10 degrees beyond the fully closed position. In addition, if the trunk is manually closed to the secondary latch position, the trunk will be electrically moved to the fully latched position.

**NOTICE**

**Close the trunk, and keep the trunk lid control button in the LOCK (button pressed) position before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always keep the Trunk Lid Control Button in the LOCK (button pressed) position when not in use. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional operation by a child.**
- **Make sure heads, other body parts or other obstacles are safely out of the way before operating the power trunk.**

**i Information**

**If the trunk lid control button is in LOCK position, the Smart Trunk system will also be deactivated.**

## Emergency trunk safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with an Emergency Trunk Safety Release lever located inside the trunk. When someone is inadvertently locked in the trunk, the trunk can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the trunk open.

**⚠ WARNING**

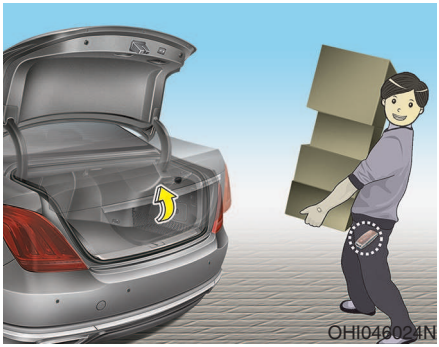
- **You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the Emergency Trunk Safety Release lever in this vehicle and how to open the trunk in case you are accidentally locked in the trunk.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **NEVER allow anyone to occupy the trunk of the vehicle at any time. If the trunk is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The trunk is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle's crush zone.**
- **Your vehicle should be kept locked and the Smart Key should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in trunks.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only.**

# SMART TRUNK (IF EQUIPPED)




On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the trunk can be opened with no-touch activation using the Smart Trunk system.

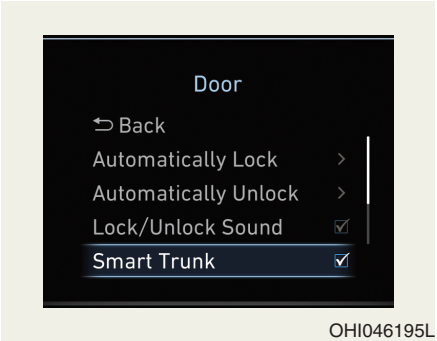
### *How to use the Smart Trunk*

The trunk can be opened with no-touch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

### Information

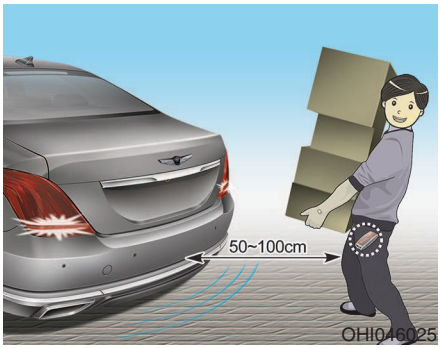
- **The Smart Trunk does not operate when:**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)**
  - **A door is not locked or closed.**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**




1. Setting

To activate the Smart Trunk, go to User Settings mode and select Smart Trunk on the LCD display.

For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

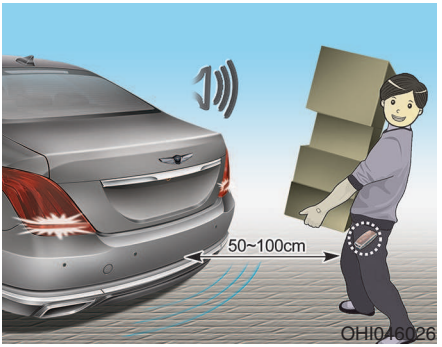



2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the trunk will open.

## Information

**Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the trunk to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The trunk will stay closed.**




3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound 2 times and then the trunk will slowly open.

The smart trunk does not operate, when the trunk lid control button is pressed to the LOCK position.

### WARNING

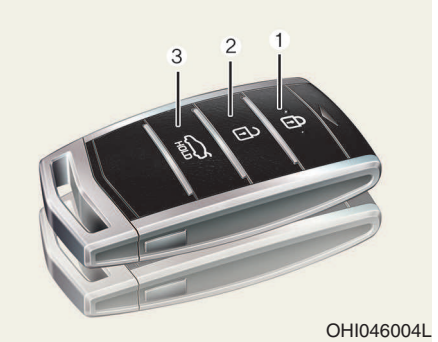
- **Make sure you close the trunk before driving your vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk before opening or closing the trunk.**
- **Make sure objects in the trunk do not come out when opening the trunk on a slope. It may cause serious injury.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Make sure to deactivate the Smart Trunk when washing your vehicle. Otherwise, the trunk may open inadvertently.**
- **The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Trunk while playing around the rear area of the vehicle.**

### *How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key*




1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Trunk open

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Trunk function for emergency situations.

## Information

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart trunk function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the trunk open button (3) for more than 1 second, the trunk opens.**
- **If you press the door lock button (1) or trunk open button (3) when the Smart Trunk function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the smart trunk function will not be deactivated.**
- **In case you have deactivated the Smart Trunk function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart trunk function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

### *Detecting area*

- The Smart Trunk operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50~100 cm from the trunk.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

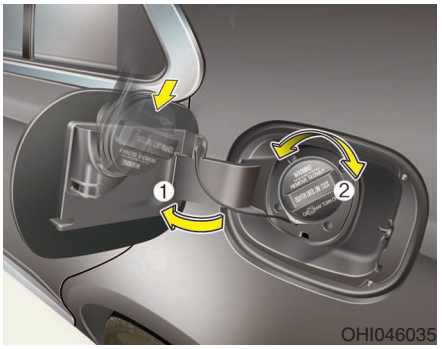
## Information

- **The Smart Trunk function will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a cellular phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The detecting range may decrease or increase when :**
  - **One side of the tire is raised to replace a tire or to inspect the vehicle.**
  - **The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.**

# FUEL FILLER DOOR

## Opening the fuel filler door

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Push the fuel filler door opener button.




3. Pull the fuel filler door (1) out to fully open.
4. To remove the fuel tank cap (2), turn it counterclockwise. You may hear a hissing noise as the pressure inside the tank equalizes. Place the cap on the fuel filler door.

### Information

**If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. Do not pry on the door. If necessary, spray around the door with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**

## Closing the fuel filler door

1. To install the fuel tank cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks” one time.
2. Close the fuel filler door until it is latched securely.

### WARNING

**Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:**

- **Read and follow all warnings posted at the gas station.**
- **Before refueling, note the location of the Emergency Gasoline Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate the potential build-up of static electricity by touching a metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source, with your bare hand.**

**(Continued)**

(Continued)

- Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling. You can generate a build-up of static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source, with your bare hand.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling has begun, contact between your bare hand and the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When refueling, always move the shift lever to the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.
- Do not use matches or a lighter and do not smoke or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station, especially during refueling.
- Do not over-fill or top-off your vehicle tank, which can cause gasoline spillage.
- If a fire breaks out during refueling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.
- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

### Information

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel Requirements" suggested in the Introduction chapter.
- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.

**NOTICE**

**If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a Genesis/ Hyundai Part cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.**

## Emergency fuel filler door release

If the fuel filler door does not open using the remote fuel filler door release button, you can open it manually. Pull the handle of the release located on the left side of the luggage compartment outward slightly.

**NOTICE**

**Do not pull the handle excessively, otherwise the luggage area trim or release handle may be damaged.**

# INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

**The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

OHI046100L

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display (including trip computer)

**NOTICE**

**All warning sounds (e.g. welcome/good-bye sound, virtual engine sound) are generated from the exterior amplifiers. If necessary, we recommend you to purchase Genesis/Hyundai Part to replace an exterior amplifier. Any unauthorized product may cause a malfunction of the exterior amplifiers.**

## Instrument cluster control

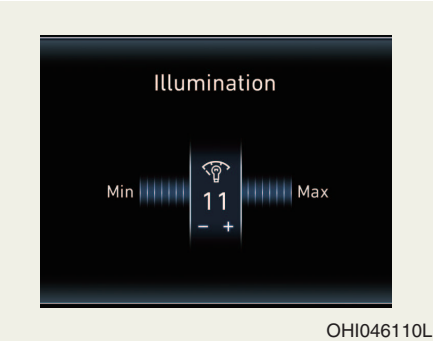
### *Instrument panel illumination*

When the vehicle's parking lights or headlights are on, press the illumination control button to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

When pressing the illumination control button, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.

**⚠ WARNING**

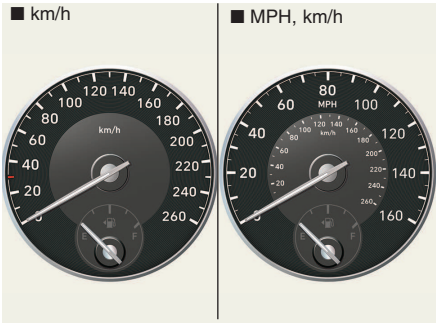
**Never adjust the instrument cluster while driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**




- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, a chime will sound.

## Gauges

### *Speedometer*




OHI046101/OHI046101L

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometers per hour (km/h) and/or miles per hour (MPH).

### *Tachometer*

OHI046102

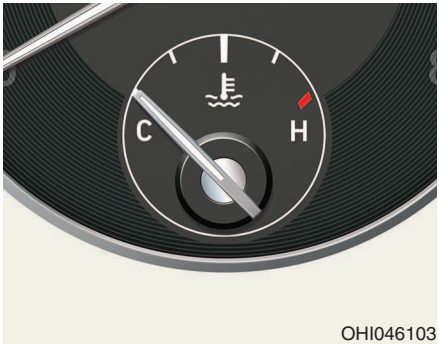
The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

**NOTICE**

**Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.**

### *Engine coolant temperature gauge*




OHI046103

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

**NOTICE**

**If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "H (Hot)" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.**

**Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the Engine Overheats" in chapter 6.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never remove the radiator cap or reservoir cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.**

### *Fuel gauge*

OHI046104

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

**Information**

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 8.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

**WARNING**

**Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.**

**You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "E (Empty)" level.**

**NOTICE**

**Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.**

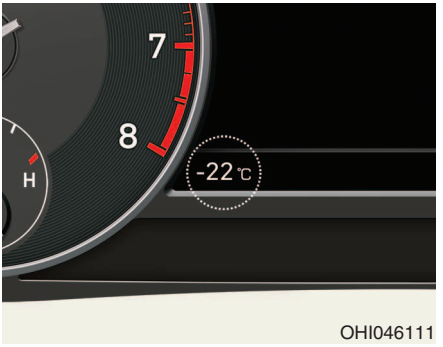
### *Outside Temperature Gauge*

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range :
  -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not immediately change like a general thermometer (to avoid distracting the driver).

The temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C) can be changed by:



OHI046111

- User Settings mode in the Cluster : You can change the temperature unit in the “Other Features - Temperature unit” .
- Automatic climate control system : While pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

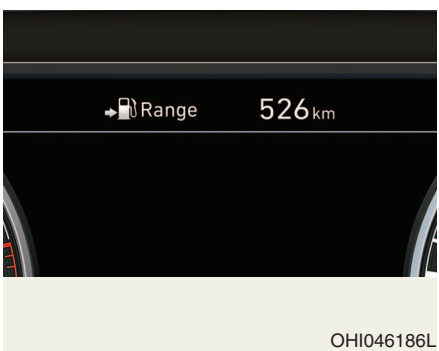
The temperature unit of the instrument cluster and climate control system will change at once.

## Odometer

OHI046114

The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

## Range




OHI046186L

The range is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel in the fuel tank.

If the estimated distance is below 1 km (1 mile), the cluster will display "----" as the range.

### Information

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the range function may not operate correctly.**
- **The range may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The range may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The range may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

## Warning and indicator lights

### *Air bag Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Seat Belt Warning Light*

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

**For more information, refer to the "Seat Belts" in chapter 2.**

### *Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

**If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required **(For more information, refer to "Brake Fluid" in chapter 7)**. After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure is required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light**

**Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.**

**In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light*

**These two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving:**

When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

**When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.**

**In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.**

**We recommend you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

**Information - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

**When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.**

**In this case, we recommend you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

### *Electric Power Steering (EPS) Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPS.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

**Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control systems which could affect drivability and/or fuel economy.**

**NOTICE**

**If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.**

**In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

### *Charging System Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

**If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

   If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

   In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

### *Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

**If the engine oil pressure is low:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level **(For more information, refer to "Engine Oil" in chapter 7)**. If the level is low, add oil as required.

**NOTICE**

**If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent severe engine damage, after the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light is illuminated and as soon as it is safe to do so, turn the engine off and check the oil level.**

**If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately.**

**In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Low Fuel Level Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

Add fuel as soon as possible.

**NOTICE**

**Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).**

### *Overspeed Warning Light (if equipped)*

**This warning light blinks:**

When you drive the vehicle more than 120 km/h.

- This is to prevent you from driving your vehicle with overspeed.
- The overspeed warning chime also sounds for approximately 5 seconds.

### *Master Warning Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction in operation in any of the following systems:
  - Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) malfunction
  - Smart high beam malfunction
  - Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) malfunction
  - Blind Spot Detection (BSD) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) malfunction
  - Smart cruise control malfunction
  - Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS) malfunction
  - Haptic steering malfunction

  To identify the details of the warning, look at the LCD display.

### *Low Tire Pressure Warning Light (if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated (The location of the underinflated tire is displayed on the supervision cluster LCD display).

**For more information, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.**

**This warning light remains ON after blinking for approximately 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF in 3 second intervals:**

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

**For more information, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Safe Stopping**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

### *Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**i Information**

**The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).**

### *AUTO HOLD Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- [White] When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the auto hold system activated.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the auto hold system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Auto Hold" in chapter 5.**

### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This indicator light blinks:**

While the ESC is operating.

**For more information, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 5.**

### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

**For more information, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 5.**

### *Immobilizer Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:**

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- At this time, you can start the engine.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

**This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:**

When the smart key is not in the vehicle.

- At this time, you cannot start the engine.

**This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:**

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Engine Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When the battery voltage of the smart key is low.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key. **(For more information, refer to "Starting the Engine" in chapter 5).**
- When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Turn Signal Indicator Light*

**This indicator light blinks:**

When you operate the turn signal indicator light.

If any of the following occurs, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all

If either of these conditions occur, we recommend you to have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the headlights are on.

### *High Beam Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

### *Light ON Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the tail lights or headlights are on.

### *Smart High Beam Indicator*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the smart high beam system will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

**For more information, refer to "Smart High Beam" in this chapter.**

### *Rear Fog Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

When the rear fog lights are on.

### *LED Headlamp Warning Light (if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**This warning light blinks:**

When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

**Continuous driving with the LED Headlamp Warning Light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp (low beam) life.**

### *Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) Warning Light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the AFLS.

**If there is a malfunction with the AFLS:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *SPORT Mode Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates**

When you select "SPORT" mode as drive mode.

**For more information, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.**

### *SMART Mode Indicator Light*

**This indicator illuminates:**

When you select “SMART” mode as drive mode.

**For more information, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.**

### *ECO Mode Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

When you select “ECO” mode as drive mode.

**For more information, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 5.**

### *INDIVIDUAL Mode Indicator Light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

When you select “INDIVIUAL” mode as drive mode.

**For more information, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.**

### *Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) Warning light (if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates :**

- When the AEB system is turned off.
- When the radar sensor or cover is blocked with dirt or snow. Check the sensor and cover and clean them by using a soft cloth.
- When there is a malfunction with AEB. In this case, we recommend you to have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- [Green] When the system operating conditions are satisfied for LDWS.
- [White] When the system operating conditions are not satisfied or when the sensor does not detect the lane line.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)" in chapter 5.**

### *LKAS (Lane Keeping Assist System) Indicator (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- [Green] When the system operating conditions are satisfied for LKAS.
- [White] When the system operating conditions are not satisfied or when the sensor does not detect the lane line.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the lane keeping assist system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)" in chapter 5.**

### *All Wheel Drive (AWD) Warning Light (if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you place the Engine Start/ Stop button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the AWD system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## LCD display messages

### *Shift to "P"*

OHI046120L

This warning message is displayed if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.

At this time, the Engine Start/Stop button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop button once more, it will turn to the ON position).

### *Low Key Battery*

OHI046118L

This warning message is displayed if the battery of the smart key is discharged while changing the Engine Start/Stop button while changing to the OFF position.

### *Press START button while turning wheel*

OHI046192L

This warning message is displayed if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed.

You should press you should press the Engine Start/Stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left.

### *Steering wheel unlocked*

OHI046193L

This warning message is displayed if the steering wheel does not lock while the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position.

### *Check steering wheel lock system*

OHI046194L

This warning message is displayed if the steering wheel does not lock normally while the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position.

### *Press brake pedal to start engine*

OHI046119L

This warning message is displayed if the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.

In order to start the vehicle, press the brake pedal to start the engine.

### *Key not in vehicle*

OHI046115L

This warning message is displayed if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop button.

When attempting to start the vehicle, always have the smart key with you.

### *Key not detected*

OHI046116L

This warning message is displayed if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop button.

### *Press start button again*

OHI046122L

This message is displayed if you were unable to start the vehicle when the Engine Start/Stop button was pressed.

If this occurs, attempt to start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Engine Start/Stop button, we recommend you to have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

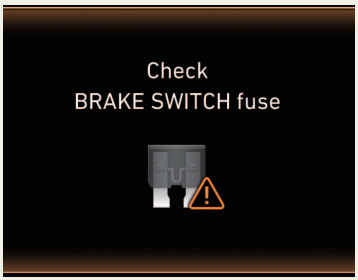
### *Press “START” button with key*

OHI046117L

This warning message is displayed if you press the Engine Start/Stop button while the warning message “Key not detected” is displayed.

At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

### *Check "BRAKE SWITCH" fuse*




OHI046124L

This warning message is displayed if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

If this message is displayed, replace the fuse with a new one before starting the vehicle. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

### *Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine*

OHI046123L

This warning message is displayed if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

**Information**

**You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.**

### *Door, hood, trunk open*

OHI046125

This warning is displayed indicating which door, or the hood, or the trunk is open.

If the door/trunk open warning is blocked with another warning message, an icon will appear on the top of the LCD display.

**WARNING**

**Before driving the vehicle, you should confirm that the door/hood/tailgate is fully closed.**

**Also, check there is no door/hood/tailgate open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster.**

### *Sunroof open (if equipped)*

OHI046126

This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.

### *Window open (if equipped)*

OHI046127

This warning is displayed indicating which window is open.

### *Illumination*

OHI046110L

The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed when it is adjusted.

**For more information, refer to "Instrument Panel Illumination" in this chapter.**

### *Icy road warning light (if equipped)*

OHI046200L

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4°C (40°F), the Icy Road Warning Light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks 5 times, and then illuminates. Also, the warning chime sounds 1 time.

#### Information

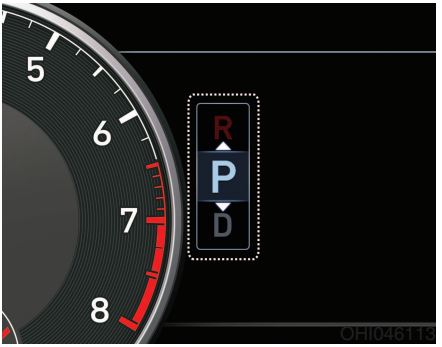
**If the icy road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.**

### *Transmission shift indicator*

This indicator displays which shift lever is selected.

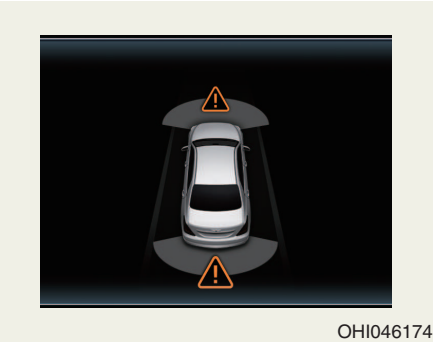
- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Manual mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8

### *Shift Indicator Pop-up*




The pop-up that indicates the current gear position is displayed in the cluster for about 2 seconds when shifting into other positions (P/R/N/D).

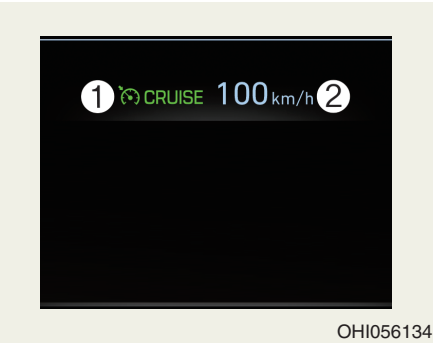
### *Parking assist system malfunction (if equipped)*




This warning is displayed if there is a problem with the Parking Assist System. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to “Parking Assist System” in chapter 3.**

### *Cruise indicator*




The indicator is displayed when the cruise control system is enabled (1) and the cruise control speed is set (2).

**For more information, refer to "Cruise Control System" or “Advanced Cruise Control System” in chapter 5.**

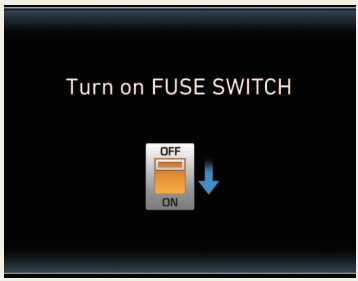
### *Low Tire Pressure (if equipped)*

OHI046129N

This warning message is displayed if the tire pressure is low. The corresponding tire on the vehicle will be illuminated.

**For more information, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.**

### *Turn on "FUSE SWITCH"*




OHI046130L

This warning message is displayed if the fuse switch located on the fuse box under the steering wheel is OFF.

If this message is displayed, turn the fuse switch on.

**For more information, refer to “Fuses” in chapter 7.**

### *Lights Mode*

■ Type A

OHI046148L

■ Type B

OHI046197L

This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

### *Wiper*

■ Type A

OHI046149L

■ Type B

OHI046198L

This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

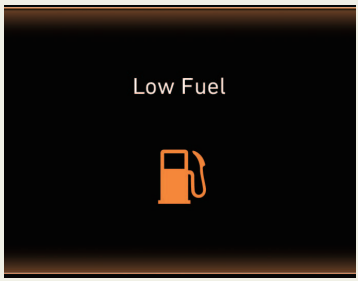
### *Low Washer Fluid*

OHI046150L

This warning message is displayed in the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.

Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

### *Low Fuel*




OHI046145L

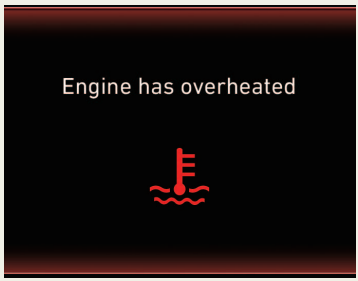
This warning message is displayed if the fuel tank is almost out of fuel.

When this message is displayed, the low fuel level warning light in the cluster will come on.

It is recommended to look for the nearest fueling station and refuel as soon as possible.

If your vehicle is equipped with a head-up display, Low Fuel warning will be displayed only on the head-up display.

### *Engine has overheated*




OHI046147L

This warning message is displayed when the engine coolant temperature is above 120°C (248°F). This means that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

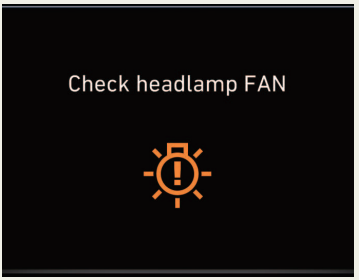
**If your vehicle is overheated, refer to "Overheating" in chapter 6.**

### *Check headlamp LED*

OHI046152L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the LED headlamp. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Check headlamp FAN*




OHI046151L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with headlamp fan. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Check turn signal (if equipped)*

OHI046153L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem the turn signal. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Check Smart High Beam System (if equipped)*

OHI046142L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Smart High Beam System. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to “Smart High Beam System” in chapter 3.**

### *Check haptic steering wheel system (if equipped)*

OHI046135L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

OHI046133L

### *Check shift lever*

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the shift lever. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Shifter Malfunction*

OHI046134L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the automatic transmission system. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Check ECS (if equipped)*

OHI046132L

This warning message is displayed if Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) system is not working properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Electronic Control Suspension (ECS)" in chapter 5.**

### Information

**When there is a malfunction with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC), the Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) warning message may be displayed as well as the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light.**

### *Check PSB*

OHI046144L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Pre-active Seat Belt (PSB) system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Seat Belt" in chapter 2.**

### *Check AEB system (if equipped)*

OHI046143L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system.

In some cases, the AEB sensor or the cover located in the lower front grille may be dirty or obscured with dirt or snow. Check the sensor and cover and clean them by using a soft cloth.

If the warning message persists, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) System" in chapter 5.**

### *Check BSD System (if equipped)*

OHI046137L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System" in chapter 5.**

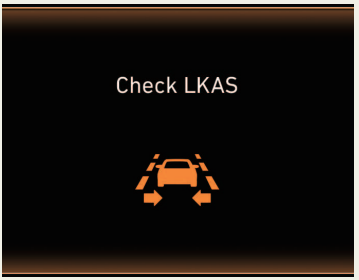
### *Check LDWS (if equipped)*

OHI056135L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS). We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)” in chapter 5.**

### *Check LKAS (if equipped)*

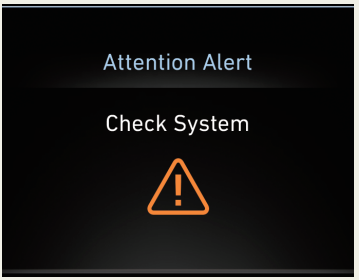



OHI056117L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS). We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)" in chapter 5.**

### *Driver Attention Alert*



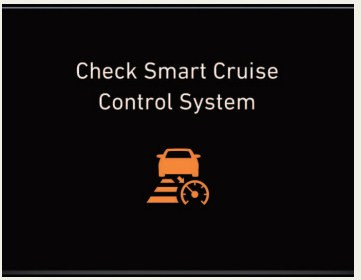

OHI046141L

### *Check System (if equipped)*

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Driver Attention Alert System. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Driver Attention Alert (DAA)" in chapter 5.**

### *Check Smart Cruise Control System (if equipped)*



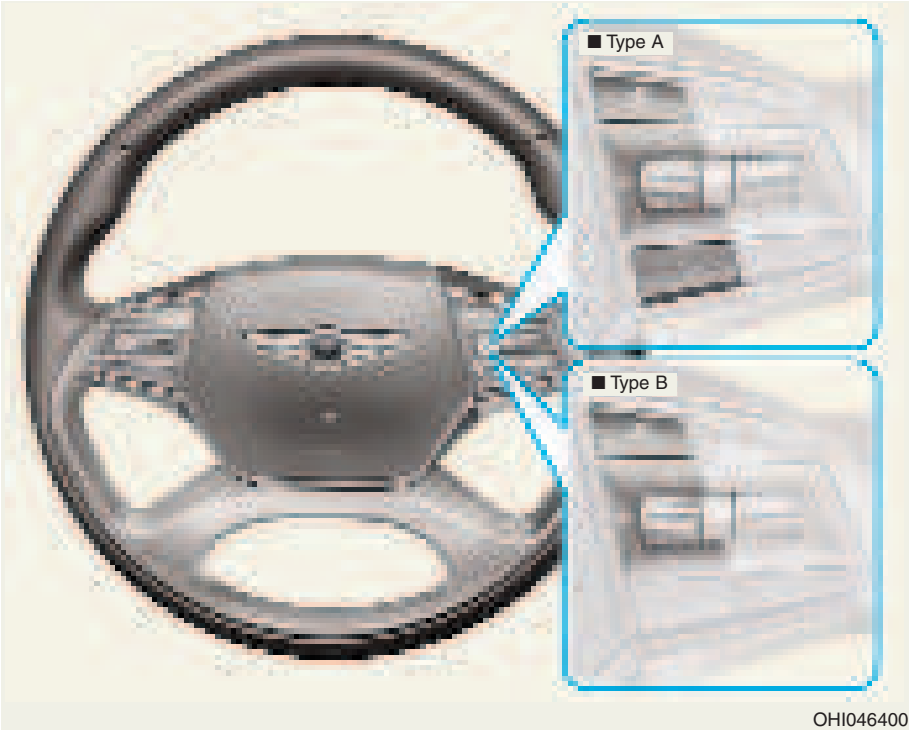

OHI046138L

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Smart Cruise Control System. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**For more information, refer to "Advance Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) System" in chapter 5.**

# LCD DISPLAY

## LCD display control




The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons.

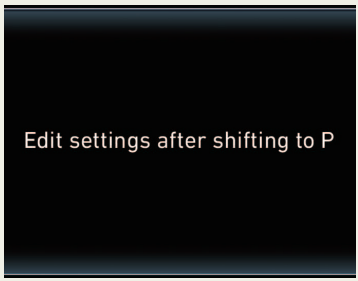
1. 🗐 : MODE button for changing modes
2. ∧, ∨ : MOVE switch for changing items
3. OK : SELECT/RESET button for setting or resetting the selected item

## LCD modes

| Modes | Symbol | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Trip Computer | | This mode displays driving information like the trip-meter, fuel economy, etc.<br>**For more information, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.** |
| Turn By Turn (TBT) (if equipped) | | This mode displays the state of the navigation. |
| Assist | | • This mode displays the state of the Smart Cruise Control (SCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).<br>**For more information, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)“and “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)” in chapter 5.**<br>• This mode displays information related to Driver Attention Alert and Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).<br>**For more information, refer to "Driver Attention Alert (DAA)" in chapter 5 and "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)“ in chapter 6.** |
| User Settings | | In this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, etc. |
| Warning | | This mode displays warning messages related to the Blind Spot Detection system, etc. |

**The information provided differs according to the items applied to your vehicle.**

### *Edit settings after shifting to P*




OHI046154L

This warning message appears if you try to adjust the User Settings while driving.

For your safety, change the User Settings after parking the vehicle, applying the parking brake and moving the shift lever to P (Park).

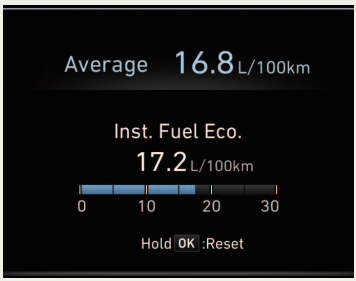
### *Quick guide help*

This mode provides quick guides for the systems in the User Settings mode.

Select an item, press and hold the OK button.

**For more information about each system, refer to this Owner's Manual.**

### *Trip computer mode*

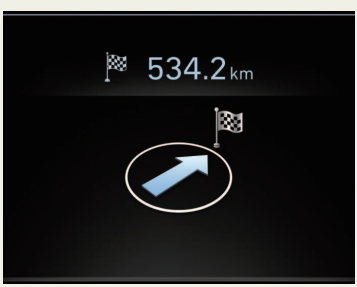



OHI046156L

The trip computer mode displays information related to vehicle driving parameters including fuel economy, trip meter information and vehicle speed.

**For more information, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.**

### *Turn By Turn (TBT) mode*




OHI046157

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

### *Assist mode*

OHI046158

#### SCC/LKAS

This mode displays the state of the Smart Cruise Control (SCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

**For more information, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)“and “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)” in chapter 5.**

OHI056120L

#### Driver Attention Alert (DAA)

This mode displays information related to Driver Attention Alert (DAA).

**For more information, refer to "Driver Attention Alert (DAA)" in chapter 5.**

OHI046160L

#### Tire Pressure

This mode displays information related to Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

**For more information, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)“ in chapter 6.**

### *Warning mode*

If one of followings occurs, warning messages will be displayed in the information mode for several seconds.

- Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB) malfunction
- Smart high beam malfunction
- Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) malfunction
- Blind Spot Detection (BSD) malfunction (if equipped)
- Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) malfunction
- Smart cruise control malfunction
- Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS) malfunction
- Haptic steering malfunction

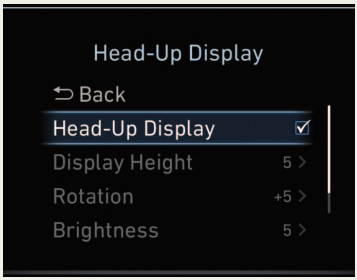
### *User settings mode*

OHI046161L

In this mode, you can change the setting of the instrument cluster, doors, lamps, etc.

1. Head-Up Display
2. Driving Assist
3. Door
4. Lights
5. Sound
6. Convenience
7. Service Interval
8. Other Features
9. Reset

The information provided differs according to the items applied to your vehicle.




OHI046162L

**1. Head-Up Display**

• Head-Up Display

If this item is checked, it will turn on the head-up display.

• Display Height

To adjust the height of the image.

• Rotation

To adjust the angle of the image.

• Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the image.

• Content Select

To select the information displayed

- Turn by Turn
- Traffic information
- Cruise control or Smart cruise control
- Lane keeping assist system or Lane departure warning system
- Blind spot detection system

• Speedometer Size

To select the speedometer font size.

- Large/Medium/Small

• Speedometer Color

To select the speedometer font color.

White/Orange/Green

**For more information, refer to the "Head-Up Display" in this chapter.**

OHI046208L

**2. Driving Assist**

• Lane Keeping Assist System

To adjust the sensitivity of the Lane Keeping Assist System.

- Lane Departure/Standard LKA/ Active LKA

**For more information, refer to the "Lane Keeping Assist System" in chapter 5.**

• Driver Attention Alert

To adjust the sensitivity of the Driver Attention Alert (DAA).

- Off/Normal/Early

**For more information, refer to the "Driver Attention Alert (DAA)" in chapter 5.**

• Smart Cruise Control Response

To adjust the sensitivity of the Smart Cruise Control system.

- Slow/Normal/Fast

**For more information, refer to the "Advanced Smart Cruise Control" in chapter 5.**

• Autonomous Emergency Braking

To activate or deactivate the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB).

**For more information, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)" in chapter 5.**

• Forward Collision Warning

To adjust the initial warning alert time for Autonomous Emergency Braking system.

- Late/Normal/Early

**For more information, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)" in chapter 5.**

• Lane Change Assist

To adjust the initial warning alert time for the Lane Change Assist.

- Normal/Late

**For more information, refer to “Blind Spot Detection" in chapter 5.**

• Rear Cross Traffic Alert

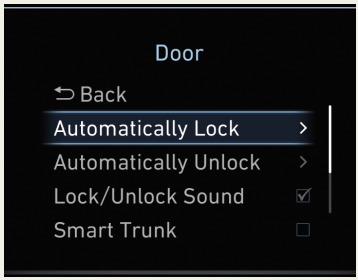
To activate or deactivate the Rear Cross Traffic Alert system.

**For more information, refer to “Blind Spot Detection" in chapter 5.**

• Blind Spot Detection Sound

To activate or deactivate the Blind Spot Detection sound.

**For more information, refer to “Blind Spot Detection" in chapter 5.**




OHI046164L

### 3. Door

• Automatically Lock

- Disable: The auto door lock operation will be canceled.
- Enable on Speed: All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).
- Driver Door Unlock : All doors will be automatically unlocked when the driver's door is unlocked.
- Enable on Shift: All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.

• Automatically Unlock

- Disable: The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.
- Vehicle Off: All doors will be automatically unlocked when the Engine Star/Stop button is set to the OFF position.
- On Shift to P: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transmission shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.

• Lock/Unlock Sound

To activate or deactivate the lock sound when the doors are locked and unlocked.

• Smart Trunk

To activate or deactivate the Smart Trunk system.

**For more information, refer to the "Smart Trunk" in this chapter.**

OHI046165L

### 4. Lights

• One Touch Turn Signal

- Off: The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated.
- 3, 5, 7 Flashes: The turn signal indicator will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

**For more information, refer to "Light" in this chapter.**

• Ambient Light Color

To select the color of the ambient light.

- Polar White/Ocean Blue/Lake Blue Green/Orchid Green/Freesia Yellow/ Sunrise Red/Aurora Purple

• Ambient Light Brightness

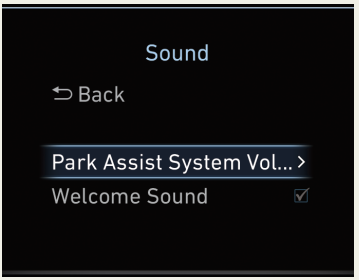
To select the brightness of the ambient light.

- Level 1~4

• Headlamp Delay

To activate or deactivate the headlamp delay function.

**For more information, refer to "Light" in this chapter**




OHI046196L

**5. Sound**

• Park Assist System Volume

To adjust the Park Assist System volume.

- Level 1~3

• Welcome Sound

To activate or deactivate the welcome sound function.

OHI046167L

**6. Convenience**

• Seat Easy Access

- None: The seat easy access function is deactivated.
- Normal/Extended: When you turn off the engine, the driver's seat will automatically move rearward short (Normal) or long (Extended) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably.

**For more information, refer to "Seat Position Memory System" in this chapter.**

• Steering Easy Access

• On: The steering wheel will automatically move forward or rearward for the driver to enter or exit the vehicle comfortably.

• Off: The steering easy access function will be deactivated.

**For more information, refer to "Seat Position Memory System" in this chapter.**

• Wireless Charging System

- Front: To activate or deactivate the wireless charging system in the front seat.
- Rear: To activate or deactivate the wireless charging system in the rear seat.

**For more information, refer to "Wireless Charging System" in this chapter.**

• Wiper/Lights Display

To activate or deactivate the Wiper/Light mode.

When activated, the LCD display shows the selected Wiper/Light mode whenever you change the mode.

• Gear Position Pop-up

To activate or deactivate the gear position pop-up.

When activated, the gear position will be displayed on the LCD display.

OHI046168L

**7. Service Interval**

• Service Interval

To activate or deactivate the service interval function.

• Adjust Interval

To adjust the interval by mileage and period.

• Reset

To reset the service interval function.

OHI046169L

**8. Other Features**

• Fuel Economy Auto Reset

- Off: The average fuel economy will not reset automatically whenever refueling.
- After Ignition: The average fuel economy will reset automatically whenever it has passed 4 hours after turning OFF the engine.
- After Refueling: The average fuel economy will reset automatically when refueling.

**For more information, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.**

• Fuel Economy Unit

To select the fuel economy unit. (km/L, L/100)

• Temperature Unit

To select the temperature unit. (°C,°F)

• Tire Pressure Unit

To select the tire pressure unit. (psi, kPa, bar)

**9. Reset**

You can reset the menus in the User Settings Mode. All menus in the User Settings Mode are initialized, except language and service interval.

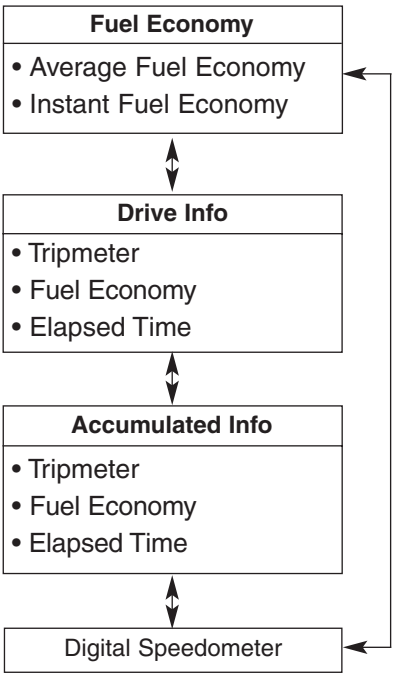
# TRIP COMPUTER

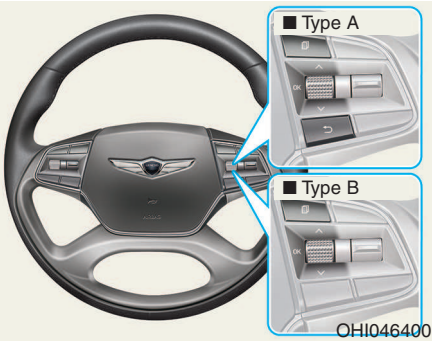
The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

## Information

**Some driving information stored in the trip computer resets if the battery is disconnected.**

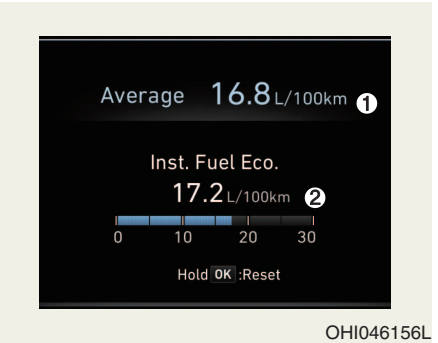
## Trip modes




To change the trip mode, toggle the "∧ , ∨" switch on the steering wheel.

### *Fuel economy*




**Average Fuel Economy (1)**

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

**Manual reset**

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the [OK] button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

**Automatic reset**

To reset the average fuel economy automatically whenever refueling, select the "After refueling" mode in User Setting menu of the LCD display (Refer to "LCD Display").

Under "After refueling" mode, the average fuel economy will be cleared to zero (----) when the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h (1 mph ) after refueling more than 6 liters (2 gallons ).

### Information

**The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 meters (0.19 miles) since the last ignition key cycle before the average fuel economy will be recalculated.**

### Instant Fuel Economy (2)

This mode displays the instantaneous fuel economy while driving when the vehicle speed is greater than 8 km/h (5 mph).

## *Driving Info display*

OHI046171L

This display shows the trip distance (1), the average fuel economy (2), and the total driving time (3).

The information is calculated for each ignition cycle. The driving information data gets initialized, when it has passed 4 hours after turning OFF the engine. In other words, the last driving information is available 4 hours after you have turned on the engine.

To manually reset the information, press and hold the OK button when viewing the Driving info. The trip distance, the average fuel economy, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The driving information will continue to be counted while the engine is still running (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light.)

### Information

**The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 meters (0.19 miles) since the last ignition key cycle before the average fuel economy will be recalculated.**

### *Accumulated Info display*

OHI046172L

This display shows the accumulated trip distance (1), the average fuel economy (2), and the total driving time (3).

The information is calculated starting from the last reset.

To manually reset the information, press and hold the OK button when viewing the Accumulated driving info. The trip distance, the average fuel economy, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The accumulated driving information will continue to be counted while the engine is still running (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light.)

#### Information

**The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 meters (0.19 miles) since the last ignition key cycle before the average fuel economy will be recalculated.**

### *Digital speedometer*

OHI046173

This message shows the speed of the vehicle (km/h, MPH).

# HEAD-UP DISPLAY (IF EQUIPPED)

The Head-Up Display is a transparent display which projects a shadow of information of the instrument cluster and navigation on the windshield glass.

### *Precautions while using the Head-Up Display*

It may be difficult to read information on the Head-Up Display in the following situations.

- The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
- The diver wears polarizing-filter sunglasses.
- An object is located above the Head-Up Display cover.
- The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
- Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
- The driver wears glasses.
- The driver wears contact lenses.

When it is difficult to read the Head-Up Display information, adjust the Head-Up display angle or the Head-Up Display brightness level in the User Settings Mode. **For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.**

We recommend you to have your Head-Up Display maintained by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The Head-Up Display maintenance requires a special windshield exclusive for the Head-Up Display.

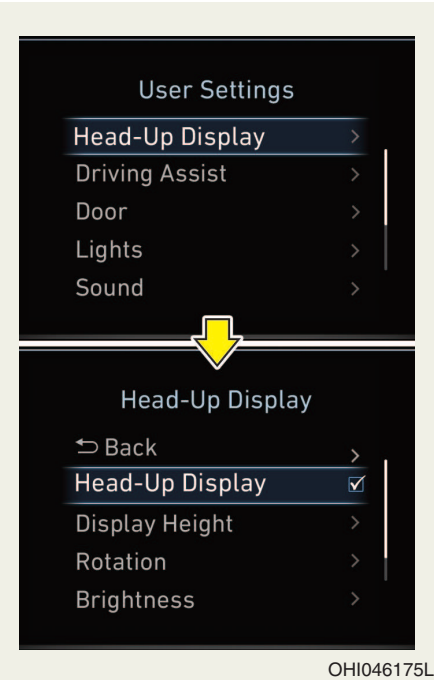
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not tint the front windshield glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head up display image may be invisible.**
- **Do not place any accessories on the crash pad or attach any objects on the windshield glass.**
- **The blind spot detection warnings on the Head-Up Display are mere supplemental. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.**

***NOTICE***

**When replacing the front windshield glass of the vehicles equipped with the head up display, replace it with a windshield glass designed for the head up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windshield glass.**

### *Head-Up Display ON/OFF*




OHI046175L

To activate the head-up display, select “Head-Up Display” on the “User Settings mode” in the cluster.

If you do not select “Head-Up Display”, the head-up display will be deactivated.

### *Head-Up Display information*

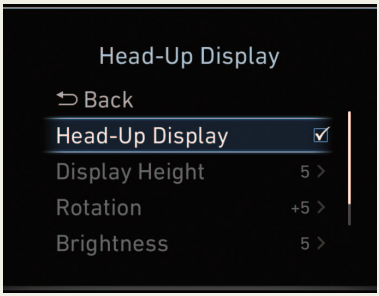
OHI046404C

1. Turn-by-turn (TBT) navigation information
2. Road information
3. Driving speed information
4. Cruise system set speed information
5. Advanced smart cruise information
6. Lane Departure Warning System LDWS) / Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) information
7. Blind spot detection warnings
8. Warning lights
9. AV information

#### Information

**If you select the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information as Head-Up Display contents, the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information will not be displayed on the LCD Display.**

### *Head-Up Display setting*




OHI046162L

The driver can set the Head-Up Display menus by using the Users Settings mode on the LCD display.

For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

- Head-Up Display
- Display Height
- Rotation
- Brightness
- Content Select
- Speedometer Size
- Speedometer Color

# LIGHT

## Exterior lights

### *Lighting control*

■ Type A

OHI046481L

■ Type B

OHI046482L

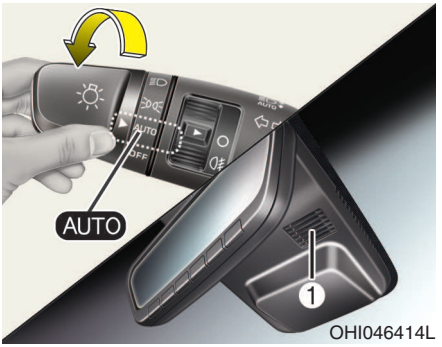
To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF (O) position

(2) AUTO light position

(3) Parking lamp position

(4) Headlamp position




OHI046414L

#### AUTO light position

When the light switch is in the AUTO position, the parking lamp and headlamp will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

Even with the AUTO light feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the lamps when driving at night or in a fog, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

**NOTICE**

- **Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel.**
- **Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windshield, the AUTO light system may not work properly.**

OHI046415L

**Parking lamp position (≣DO≣)**

When the light switch is in the parking lamp position (1st position), the parking lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

OHI046416L

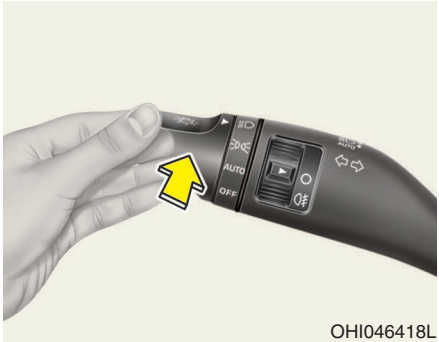
**Headlamp position (≣D)**

When the light switch is in the head lamp position (2nd position), the headlamp, parking lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

### Information

**The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamp.**

### *High beam operation*



OHI046418L

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlamp high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you. The low beams will turn on.

**WARNING**

**Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles approaching you. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.**

OHI046417L

To flash the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams will remain ON as long as you hold the lever towards you.

## Smart high beam (if equipped)

OHI046419L

The Smart High Beam is a system that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) according to the brightness of other vehicles and road conditions.

### Operating condition

1. Place the light switch in the AUTO position.
2. Turn on the high beam by pushing the lever away from you.

   The smart high beam (AUTO) indicator will illuminate.
3. The Smart High Beam will turn on when vehicle speed is above 45km/h (28 mph).
   - If the lever is pushed away when the Smart High Beam is operating, the Smart High Beam will turn off and the high beam will be on continuously. The smart high beam (AUTO) indicator will turn off.
   - If the lever is pulled towards you when the Smart High Beam is operating and turns on high beams, the Smart High Beam will turn off.

4. If the light switch is placed to the headlamp position, the Smart High Beam will turn off and the low beam will be on continuously.

The high beam switches to low beam in the below conditions.

- When the Smart High Beam is off.
- When the light switch is not in the AUTO position.
- When the headlamp is detected from the on-coming vehicle.
- When the tail lamp is detected from the front vehicle.
- When the surrounding is bright enough high beams are not needed.
- When streetlights or other lights are detected.
- When vehicle speed is below 35km/h (22 mph).

**NOTICE**

**The system may not operate normally in the below conditions.**

- **When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, hidden from sight, etc.**
- **When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.**
- **When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.**
- **When the front window is covered with foreign matters such as ice, dust, fog, or is damaged.**
- **When there is a similar shape lamp with the front vehicle's lamps.**

**(Continued)**

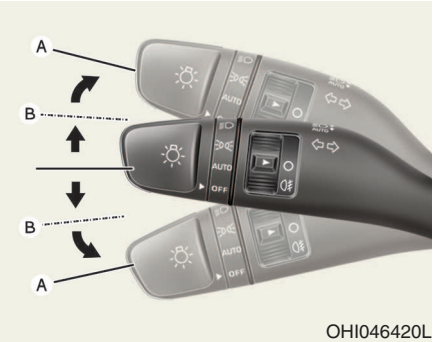
**(Continued)**

- **When it is hard to see because of fog, heavy rain or snow.**
- **When the headlamp is not repaired or replaced at an authorized dealer.**
- **When headlamp aiming is not properly adjusted.**
- **When driving on a narrow curved road or rough road.**
- **When driving downhill or uphill.**
- **When only part of the vehicle in front is visible on a crossroad or curved road.**
- **When there is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror.**
- **When the road conditions are bad such as being wet or covered with snow.**
- **When the front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps on.**
- **When a vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.**
- **When the vehicle is tilted from a flat tire or being towed.**
- **When the LDWS (Lane Departure Warning System) warning light illuminates. (if equipped)**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not place any accessories, stickers or tint the windshield.**
- **Have the windshield glass replaced from an authorized dealer.**
- **Do not remove or impact related parts of the Smart High Beam system.**
- **Be careful that water doesn't get into the Smart High Beam unit.**
- **Do not place objects on the dashboard that reflects light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if sunlight is reflected.**
- **At times, the Smart High Beam system may not work properly, always check the road conditions for your safety. When the system does not operate normally, manually change between the high beam and low beam.**

### *Turn signals and lane change signals*




OHI046420L

To signal a turn, move the lever up for a right turn or down for a left turn to position (A). The lever will return to the OFF position when the turn is completed.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

#### One-touch turn signal function (if equipped)

To activate an one-touch turn signal function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can activate/deactivate the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking (3, 5, or 7) from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

**ℹ Information**

**If the turn signal indicator stays on and does not blink, or if it blinks abnormally, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit. The bulb may require replacement.**

### *Rear fog lamp (if equipped)*

OHI046483L

To turn on the rear fog lamp:

Position the light switch in the headlamp position, and then turn the light switch (1) to the rear fog lamp position.

To turn the rear fog lamps off, do one of the following:

- Turn off the headlamp switch.
- Turn the light switch to the rear fog lamp position again.

### *Battery saver function*

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lamp when the driver turns the engine off and opens the driver-side door.

With this feature, the parking lamps will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

If necessary, to keep the lamps on when the engine is turned off, perform the following:

1) Open the driver-side door.
2) Turn the parking lamps OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

### *Headlamp delay function (if equipped)*

If you place the Engine Start/Stop button in to the ACC or OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, with the engine off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

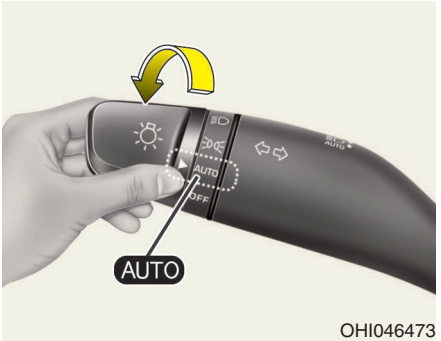
The headlamps (and/or parking lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the light switch to the OFF or AUTO position. However, if you turn the light switch to the AUTO position when it is dark outside, the headlamps will not be turned off.

You can activate or deactivate the Headlamp Delay function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

**NOTICE**

**If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamp delay function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, It causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.**

### *AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) (if equipped)*



OHI046473

Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and leveling the headlamp.

Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the AFLS, change the switch to other positions. After turning the AFLS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but leveling operates continuously.

If the AFLS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFLS is not working properly.

Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Daytime running light (DRL)*

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when:

1. The light switch is in the headlamp position, including the operation that the headlamp is turned on automatically in the AUTO light position.
2. The engine is turned off.
3. The hazard warning flasher is on.
4. You turn the turn signal light on.
   - If you turn on the turn signal light, only the corresponding daytime running lights will turn off.
   - If you turn on turn signal light with the parking lamp turned on, the daytime running lights will turn off but the parking lamp remains on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

**Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.**

### *Headlamp leveling device*

It automatically adjusts the headlamp beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

And it offers proper headlamp beam under various conditions.

### *Headlamp washer (if equipped)*

Washer fluid will be sprayed on the headlamps at the same time you operate the windshield washer when:

1. The Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. The light switch is in the headlamp position (low beam).

**i Information**

- **Check the headlamp washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlamp lenses.**
- **The headlamp washer can be operated 15 minutes after the last operation.**

## Traffic change (for Europe)

Use this function when you visit a country with opposite traffic direction.

**For more information, refer to “Light Bulbs” in chapter 7.**

## Welcome system (if equipped)

### *Welcome light (if equipped)*

#### Puddle lamp

When all the doors (and trunk) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp will come on for about 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.
- When the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

Also, if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position, the outside rearview mirror will unfold automatically.

#### Door handle lamp (if equipped)

When all the doors (and trunk) are closed and locked, the door handle lamp will come on for about 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.
- When the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

#### Headlamp and Parking lamp

When the headlamp (lamp switch in the headlamp or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and trunk) are locked and closed, the parking lamp and headlamp will come on for 15 seconds if/or any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the parking lamp and headlamp will turn off immediately.

You can activate or deactivate the Welcome Light from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

### *Interior lamp*

When the interior lamp switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and trunk) are closed and locked, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you grab the outside door handle.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the room lamp will turn off immediately.

## Interior lights

**NOTICE**

**Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is turned off or the battery will discharge.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and cause an accident.**

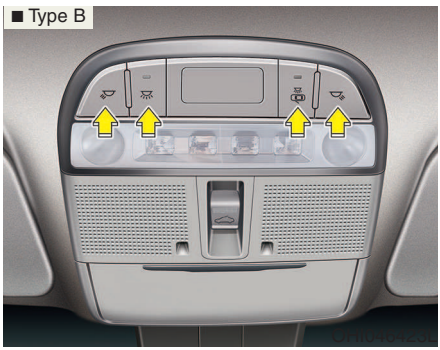
### *Interior lamp AUTO cut*

The interior lamps will automatically go off approximately 20 minutes after the engine is turned off and the doors closed. If a door is opened, the lamp will go off 40 minutes after the engine is turned off. If the doors are locked by the smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lamps will go off five seconds later.

### *Front lamps*

■ Type A

■ Type B



- : Press either of these buttons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

- : Press the button to turn ON all front lamps. Re-repress the button to turn OFF all front lamps.

- :

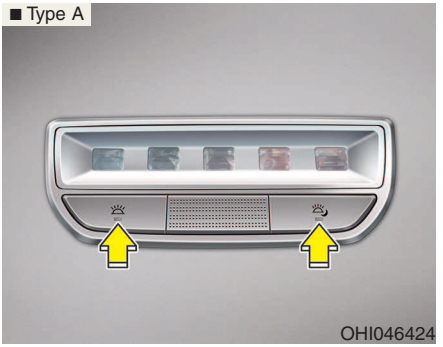
  The front or rear room lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened if the engine is running or not. When doors are unlocked by the Smart Key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear room lamps go out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door is closed. However, if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps will turn off. If a door is opened with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position or the OFF position, the front and rear lamps stay on for about 20 minutes.

- :

  Press this button to turn the front and rear room lamps on and off.

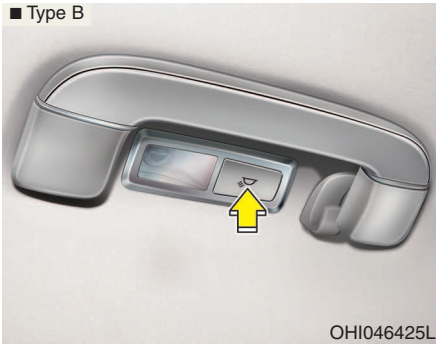
### *Rear lamps*

■ Type A



OHI046424

■ Type B



OHI046425L

- :

  Press the button to turn ON the rear map lamp and the door handle lamps. You cannot separately turn OFF the door handle lamps. Re-press the button to turn OFF the rear map lamp and the door handle lamps together.

- :

  Press this button to turn the rear room lamps on and off.

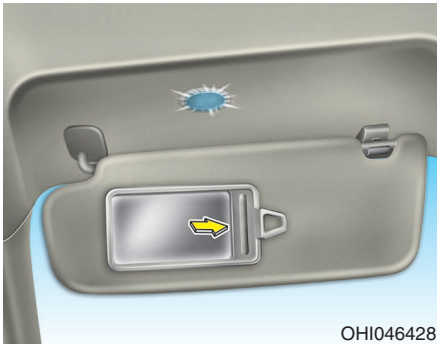
- :

  Press the button to dim the rear map lamp. Re-press the button to turn OFF the rear map lamp.

**NOTICE**

**Do not leave the lamp switches on for an extended period of time when the engine is turned off.**

### *Vanity mirror lamp (Front)*




Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror light.

**NOTICE**

**To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the vanity mirror cover after using the mirror.**

### *Vanity mirror lamp (Rear)*

Press the vanity mirror on the vehicle ceiling. Then, it automatically turns ON the rear vanity mirror lamp while opening the cover.

### *Glove box lamp*

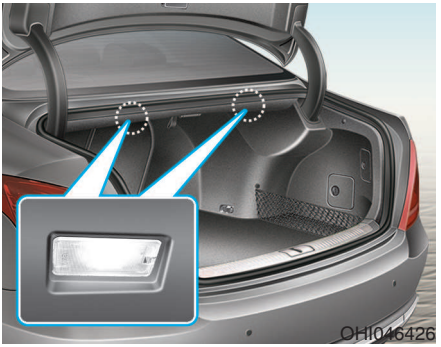
The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

If the glove box is not closed, the lamp will turn off after 20 minutes.

**NOTICE**

**To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.**

### *Trunk room lamp*

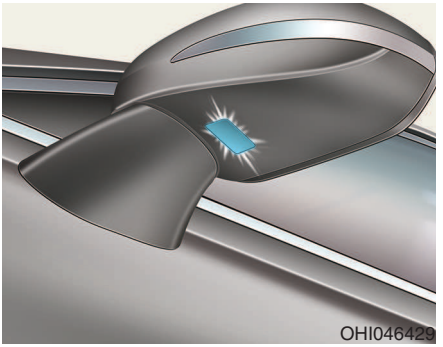



The trunk room lamp comes on when the trunk is opened.

**NOTICE**

**The trunk lamp comes on as long as the trunk lid is open. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the trunk lid securely after using the trunk.**

### *Puddle lamp*




#### Welcome light

When all doors (and trunk) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp will come on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked by the smart key or outside door handle button.

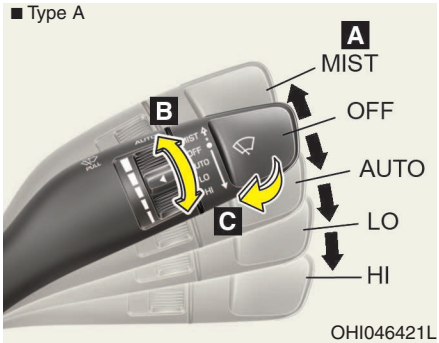
For more information, refer to "Welcome System" in this chapter.

#### Escort light

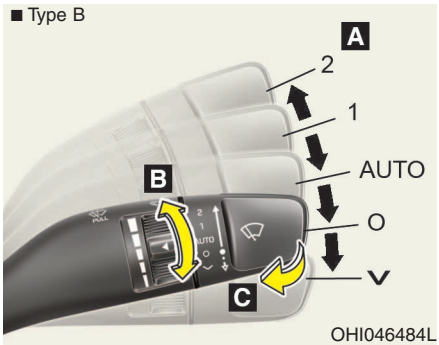
When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is opened, the puddle lamp will come on for 30 seconds. If the driver's door is closed within the 30 seconds, the puddle lamp will turn off after 15 seconds. If the driver's door is closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn off immediately.

The Puddle Lamp Escort Light will turn on only the first time the driver's door is opened after the engine is turned off.

# WIPERS AND WASHERS



OHI046421L



OHI046484L

**A : Wiper speed control**

- MIST ( ∨ ) – Single wipe
- OFF (O) – Off
- AUTO – Automatic control wipe
- LO (1) – Low wiper speed
- HI (2) – High wiper speed

**B : Auto control wipe time adjustment**

**C : Wash with brief wipes**

## Windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

- MIST / ∨ :

  For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to ∨ or MIST position and release. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.
- OFF / O :

  Wiper is not in operation.
- AUTO :

  The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (B).
- LO / (1) :

  The wiper runs at a lower speed.
- HI / (2) :

  The wiper runs at a higher speed.

### *i* Information

**If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.**

**If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.**

### *AUTO (Automatic) control*

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates.

When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (B).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

**⚠ WARNING**

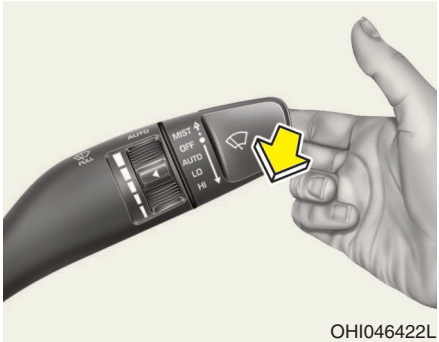
**To avoid personal injury from the windshield wipers, when the engine is running and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode:**

- **Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.**
- **Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.**
- **Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.**

**NOTICE**

- **When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF (O) position to stop the auto wiper operation. The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.**
- **Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.**
- **There may be a malfunction with the wiper sensor while operating in the AUTO mode, when there are interruptions by foreign substances, such as small pebbles, dust, or insects, or when an outside brightness is abruptly changed while driving.**
- **There may be a malfunction with the wiper sensor in detecting a rainfall amount, when the front windshield is coated with wax, or when the wiper blades are worn out.**

## Windshield washers



OHI046422L

In the OFF (O) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

If equipped with the Headlamp Washer, washer fluid will be sprayed on the headlamp at the same time you operate the windshield washer when:

1. The Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. The light switch is in the headlamp position.

**⚠ WARNING**

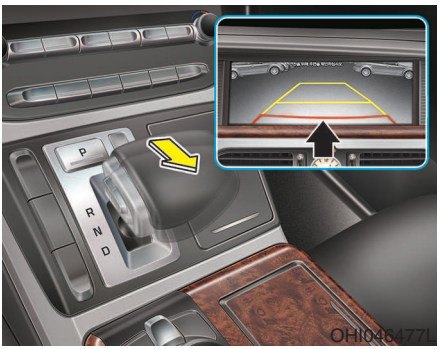
**When the outside temperature is below freezing, ALWAYS warm the windshield using the defroster to prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windshield and obscuring your vision which could result in an accident and serious injury or death.**

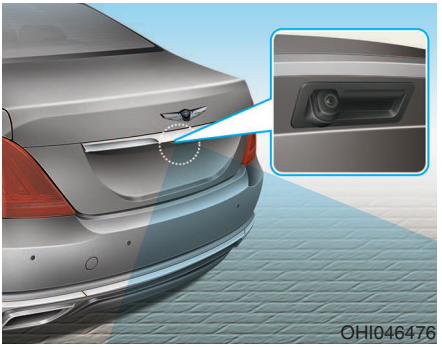
**NOTICE**

- **To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.**
- **To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.**
- **To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.**

# DRIVER ASSIST SYSTEM

## Rear view camera (if equipped)




The Rear View Camera will activate when the engine is running and the shift lever is in the R (Reverse) position.

This is a supplemental system that helps provide a view of the area behind the vehicle through the A/V display while the vehicle is in the R (Reverse) position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The rear camera display is not a safety device. It only serves to assist the driver in identifying objects directly behind the middle of the vehicle. The camera does NOT cover the complete area behind the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never rely solely on the rear camera display when backing-up.**
- **ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle in any direction to prevent a collision.**
- **Always pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects, particularly pedestrians, and especially children.**

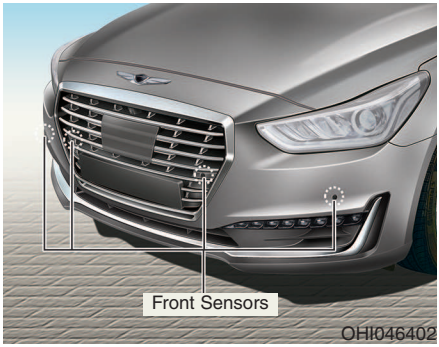
***NOTICE***

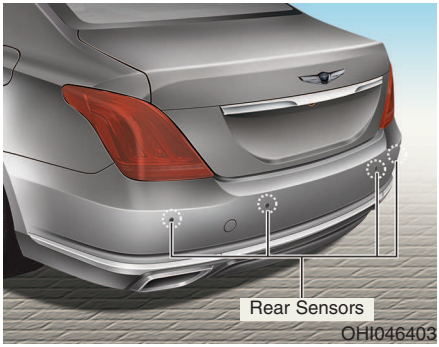
**Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the lens. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.**

### *i* Information

**Always keep the camera lens clean. The camera may not work normally if the lens is covered with dirt or snow.**

## Parking assist system (if equipped)




The Parking Assist System assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within approximately 100 cm (40 in) in front and 120 cm (47 in) behind the vehicle.

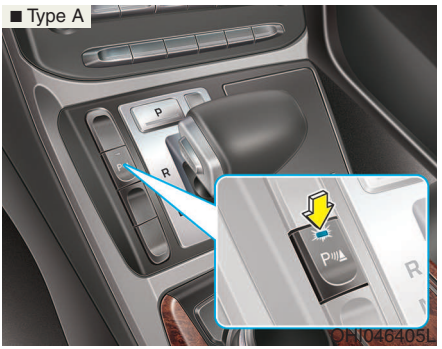
This system is a supplemental system that senses objects within the range and location of the sensors, it cannot detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are not any objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle in any direction to prevent a collision.**
- **Always pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects, particularly pedestrians, and especially children.**
- **Be aware that some objects may not be visible on the screen or be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**

### *Operation of the Parking Assist System*

■ Type A




■ Type B

#### Operating condition

- This system will activate when the Parking Assist System button is pressed with the engine running.
- The Parking Assist System button turns on automatically and activates the Parking Assist System when you move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position. However, if the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph), the system will not warn you even though objects are detected, and if the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), the system will turn off automatically. To turn on the system, press the Parking Assist System button.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

### Types of warning sound and indicator

| Distance from object | | Warning indicator | | Warning sound |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | When driving forward | When driving rearward | |
| 100cm~61cm | Front | | - | Buzzer beeps intermittently |
| 120cm~61cm | Rear | - | | Buzzer beeps intermittently |
| 60cm~31cm | Front | | | Buzzer beeps frequently |
| | Rear | - | | Buzzer beeps frequently |
| 30cm | Front | | | Buzzer sounds continuously |
| | Rear | - | | Buzzer sounds continuously |

**NOTICE**

- **The indicator may differ from the illustration as objects or sensors status. If the indicator blinks, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the audible warning does not sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting into R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction with the Parking Assist System. If this occurs, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

### *Non-operational conditions of Parking Assist System*

**Parking Assist System may not operate normally when:**

- Moisture is frozen to the sensor.
- The sensor is covered with dirt or debris such as snow or ice, or the sensor cover is blocked.
- The Parking Assist button is off.

**There is a possibility of Parking Assist System malfunction when:**

- Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
- Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
- Heavy rain or water spray is present.
- Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are present near the sensor.
- Any non-factory equipment or accessories have been installed, or if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified.
- The sensor is covered with dirt or debris such as snow or ice.

**Detecting range may decrease when:**

- Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
- Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

**The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:**

- Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
- Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

### *Parking assist system precautions*

- The parking assist system may not operate consistently in some circumstances depending on the speed of the vehicle and the shapes of the objects detected.
- The parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 40 cm (15 in) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is blocked with snow, dirt, debris, or ice, the parking assist system may be inoperative until the snow or ice melts, or the debris is removed. Use a soft cloth to wipe debris away from the sensor.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.
- Do not spray the sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Doing so may cause the sensors to fail to operate normally.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a Parking Assist System. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

## Around View Monitoring (AVM) system

OHI046408L

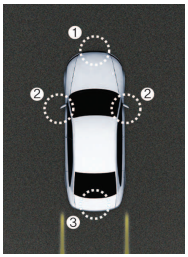
The Around View Monitoring (AVM) system is a driving assist system. It guides the driver to safely park the vehicle by providing an around view image on the screen.

Press the AVM button to turn on the AVM system with the engine running. Re-press the AVM button again to turn off the AVM system.

### *Operating conditions*

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position
- When the shift lever is in the D (Drive), N (Neutral), or R (Reverse) position. (It does not operate with the shift lever in P (Park).)
- When vehicle speed is lower than 20km/h

**⚠ CAUTION**



OHI046409

**1) Front camera**
**2) Left/Right camera**
**3) Rear camera**

**The Around View Monitoring (AVM) System is a supplemental system to assist you in parking. However, the screen displays an integrated image, which combines 4 images from the front/rear/right/left cameras.**

**Therefore, the actual parking line locations may differ from the image displayed on the screen. ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle.**

***NOTICE***

**Always keep the camera lens clean. The camera may not work normally if the lens is covered with foreign substances.**

## Information

- **When vehicle speed is over 20km/h, the AVM system will turn off. The system will not automatically turn on again, even though vehicle speed gets below 20 km/h. Push the AVM button again, to turn on the system.**
- **When the vehicle is backing up, the AVM system will turn ON regardless of vehicle speed or AVM button status. However, if vehicle speed is over 10 km/h when driving forward, the AVM system will turn off.**
- **A warning appears on the AVM system when:**
  - **The trunk is opened**
  - **The driver's door is opened**
  - **The passenger's door is opened**
  - **The outside rearview mirror is folded**
- **If the AVM system is not operating normally, we recommend the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

For more information, please refer to the separate manual that was supplied with your vehicle.

# DEFROSTER

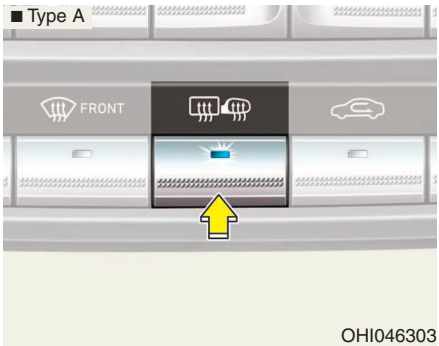
**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.**

### Information

**If you want to defrost and defog the front windshield, refer to "Windshield Defrosting and Defogging" in this chapter.**

## Rear window defroster




OHI046303

OHI046304

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, while engine is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

### Information

- **If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.**
- **The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.**

### *Outside mirror defroster*

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

### *Front wiper deicer*

If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

# AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

■ Front

• Type A

• Type B

■ Rear

OHI046300L/OHI046301L/OHI046302L

**Front**

1. Driver's temperature control knob
2. Driver's AUTO button
3. OFF button
4. Driver's fan speed control button
5. SYNC button
6. Passenger's AUTO button
7. Passenger's temperature control knob
8. Driver's mode selection button
9. Air conditioning button
10. Front windshield defroster button
11. Rear window defroster button
12. Air intake control button
13. Passenger's mode selection button
14. AQS (Air quality system) button
15. Passenger's fan speed control button

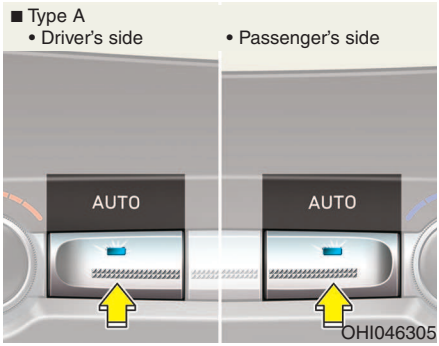
**Rear**

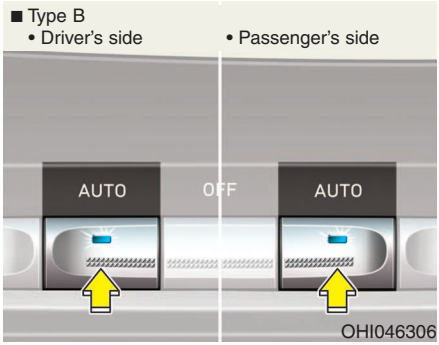
16. Rear fan speed control knob
17. Rear mode selection button
18. Rear OFF button
19. Rear AUTO button
20. Rear temperature control knob
21. LCD display

**NOTICE**

**Operating the blower when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.**

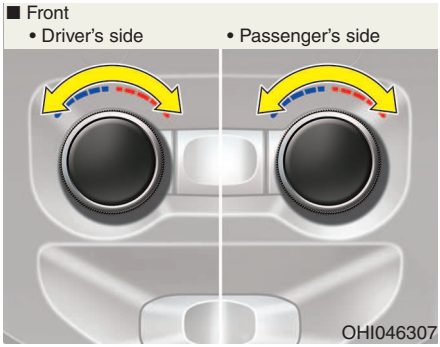
## Automatic heating and air conditioning

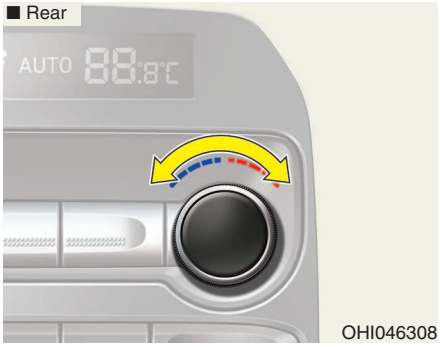



1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically according to the temperature setting.




2. Turn the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature.

### Information

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Front windshield defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windshield defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the LCD display once again.)**
  - **Fan speed control button**

  **The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.**
- **For your convenience, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 23°C (73°F).**

## Information

**Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.**

## Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected. When pressing any button except the AUTO button while using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

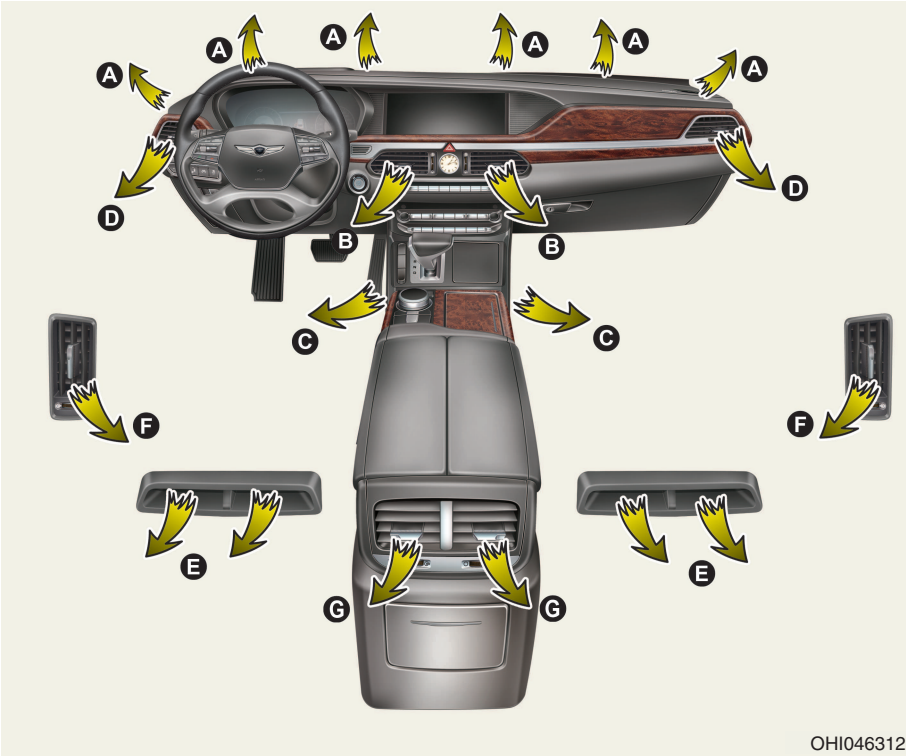
   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling;

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.

The climate control system settings will be maintained, even when the engine is turned OFF. However, the climate control system settings will be initialized when the battery has been discharged, or when the cables have been disconnected. In this case, adjust the climate control system settings again.

### *Mode selection*

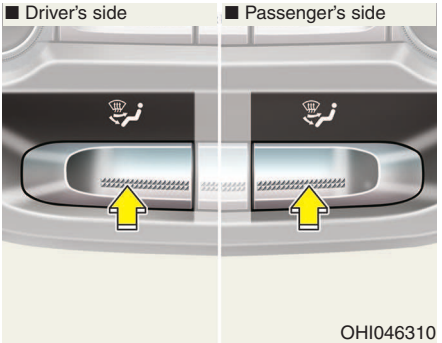



**Rear outlet vents (F)**

The rear outlet vents are controlled by the rear climate control system. However, external conditions and manual settings also have influences on the actual operation of the rear outlet vents by blocking air flows or changing air flow volumes.

The rear outlet vents may blow slightly cooler air when the heater is operating due to some heat loss through the air ducts from the front of the vehicle.

To prevent this, the rear outlet vents may not blow any air immediately after a cold start when the outside temperature is detected to be extremely low in winter and the engine has not sufficiently warmed up.




**Front mode selection button**

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:

## Information

**The passenger's side cannot select the Floor & Defrost ( ) mode.**

**Face-Level (B, D, F, G)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Bi-Level (B, C, D, E, F, G)**

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

**Floor & Defrost (A, C, E, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

**Floor-Level (A, C, E, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

**Rear mode selection button**

If you press the rear mode selection button, you can adjust the rear mode individually.

To adjust the rear mode individually, the LOCK button on the rear armrest must be deactivated (button indicator off). If the LOCK button is activated (button indicator on), the rear mode will operate same as the front mode.

For more information on the LOCK button, refer to “Rear Switches Operating Limitation” in chapter 2.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:

**Face-Level (G, F)**

Air flow is toward the upper body and face

**Bi-Level (G, E, F)**

Air flow is toward the face and floor

**Floor-Level (F)**

Air flow is toward the floor.

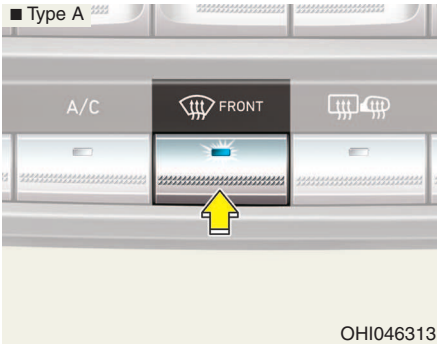
## Information

**If the indicator illuminates on the LCD display of the rear climate control system, the air flow will be blocked, and the rear mode selection button will become inoperable in the below situations.**

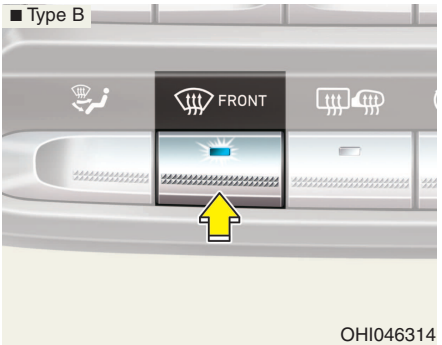
- **The front windshield defroster is ON.**
- **The auto defogging system operates.**
- **Right after the heating and air conditioning system is operated in winter.**
- **The climate control system is turned OFF after turning ON the front defroster button.**

**To operate the rear mode selection buttons again, turn OFF the front defroster button while operating the climate control system.**

■ Type A



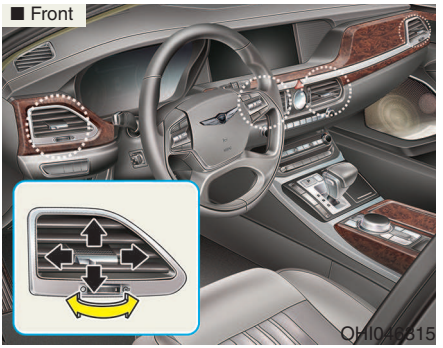

■ Type B



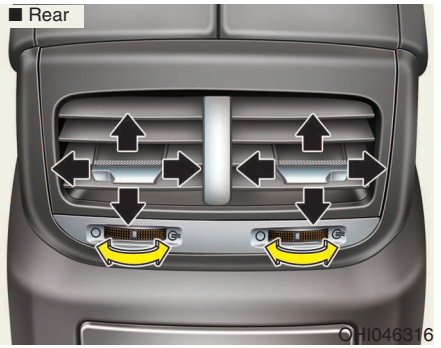

## Defrost-Level (A)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

■ Front




■ Rear

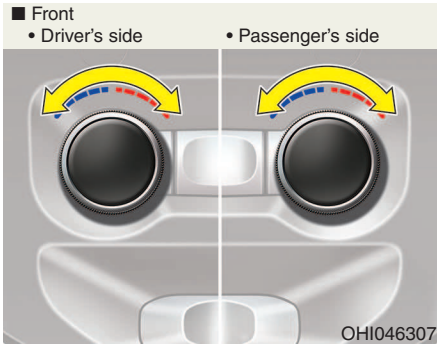


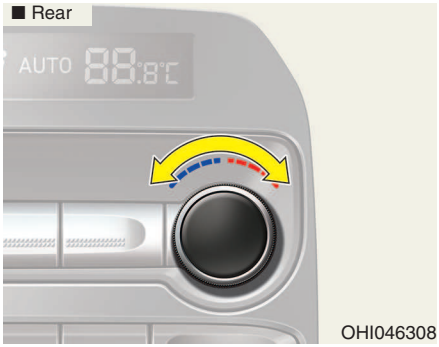

## Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel. To close the vent, rotate it left (○) to the maximum position. To open the vent, rotate it right (≋) to the desired position.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

### *Temperature control*




The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the right. The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the left. The temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C (1°F). When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

### Temperature conversion

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

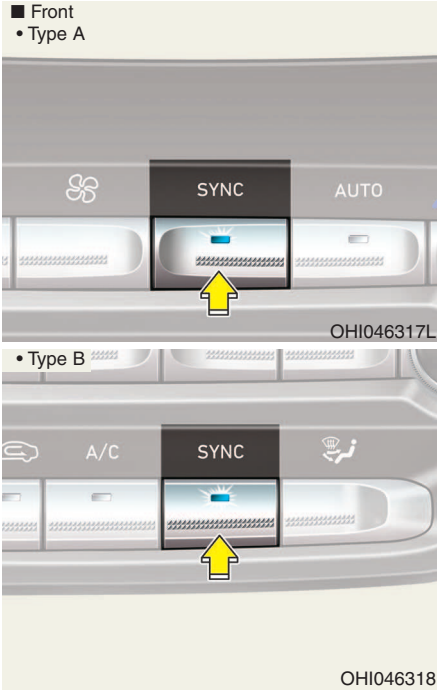
This is a normal condition. You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows;

- Automatic climate control system

  While pressing the OFF button, press the driver's side AUTO button for 3 seconds or more. The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

- 'User settings mode' in the cluster : You can change the temperature unit in the 'Other features - Temperature unit'

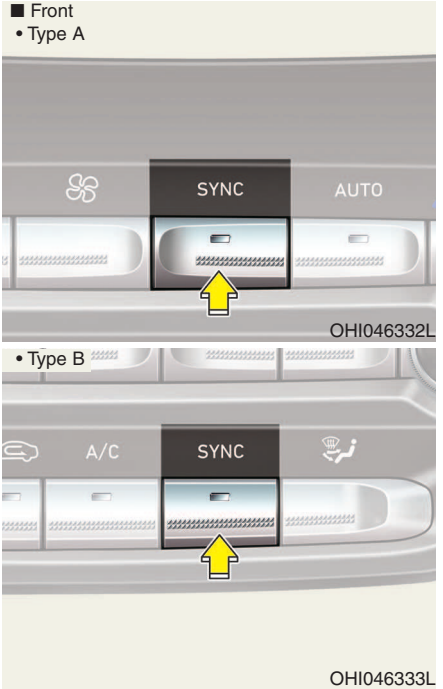
### *SYNC button*




**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature and air flow direction equally**

- Press the SYNC button (button indicator ON) to adjust the driver and front/rear passenger side temperature and air flow direction equally.

  The front and rear passenger side temperature and air flow direction will be set to the same temperature and air flow direction as the driver's side.
- Turn the temperature control knob for the driver's side to control the temperature settings of all seats. Also, press the mode selection button for the driver's side to control the air flow direction of all seats.




**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature and air flow direction individually**

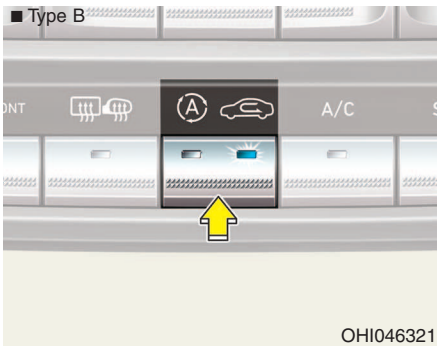
- Press the SYNC button again (button indicator OFF) to adjust the driver and front/rear passenger side temperature and air flow direction individually.
- When the temperature settings are differently adjustable :
  - Operate the driver's side temperature control knob and mode selection button to adjust the driver's side temperature and air flow directions.
  - Operate the front/rear passenger's side temperature control knob and mode selection button to adjust the front/rear passenger's side temperature and air flow directions.

## *Air intake control*

■ Type A

OHI046320

■ Type B



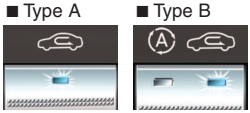

OHI046321

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

### Recirculated air position

■ Type A ■ Type B



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### Outside (fresh) air position

■ Type A ■ Type B

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### *i* Information

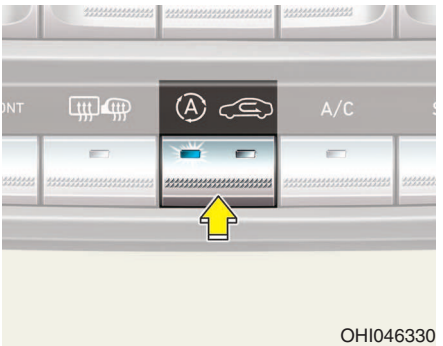
**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**

**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**

### *Air quality system (AQS, if equipped)*




OHI046330

The air inflow from outside the vehicle can be automatically controlled. Press the button to activate the air quality control system.

When using AQS mode, AQS (Air Quality System) automatically senses outdoor air pollutants and minimizes them from entering the vehicle, however, unpleasant or foul odors that might be present may still be noticeable within the vehicle.

**Exhaust gas cutoff mode :**

Air enters the vehicle from the outside.

If exhaust gas from the outside of the vehicle is detected, the exhaust gas cutoff mode is automatically converted from the outside air position to the recirculated air position to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

**ℹ Information**

- **The AQS button indicator will immediately illuminate when the engine is started with the AQS in the ON position. However, the AQS starts operating after 40 seconds.**
- **The AQS filters out toxic exhaust (i.e. NO, NO2, SO2, CO, CxHy) to prevent it from entering the passenger compartment but, does not totally block odor.**

**The AQS does not operate in any of the following situations :**

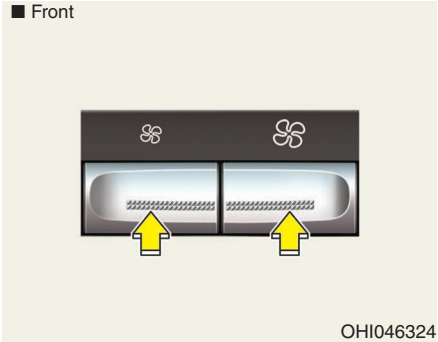
- The AQS button is re-repressed to the OFF position.
- Either the outside (fresh) air position or the recirculated air position is selected.
- The defroster button is pressed to the ON position, or the floor & defrost ( ) mode is selected.
- The temperature is set to either the highest (HI) or the lowest (Lo) position, while the climate control system is automatically controlled (AUTO button indicator ON).
- The OFF button of the climate control system is selected.
- The auto defogging system operates to defog the front windshield.

## Information

**If the windows fog up with the Recirculation or AQS mode selected, set the air intake control to the fresh air position or or turn off the AQS mode.**

### *Fan speed control*

■ Front



OHI046324

Press the ( ) button to increase the fan speed and air flow. Press the ( ) button to decrease fan speed and air flow.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.

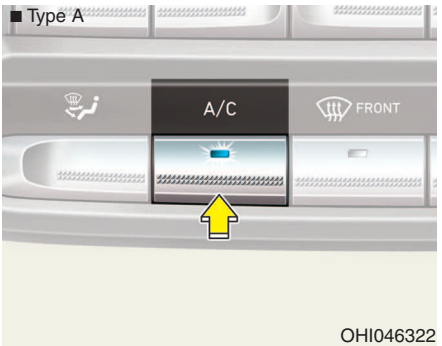
■ Rear

OHI046331

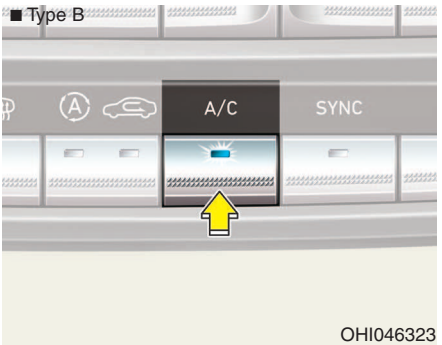
Turn the knob to the right ( ) to increase the fan speed and airflow. Turn the knob to the left ( ) to decrease fan speed and airflow.

To adjust the rear fan speed control individually, the LOCK button on the rear armrest must be deactivated (button indicator off). If the LOCK button is activated (button indicator on), the rear fan speed control will operate same as the front fan speed control. For more information on the LOCK button, refer to “Rear Switches Operating Limitation” in chapter 2.

### *Air conditioning*



OHI046322



OHI046323

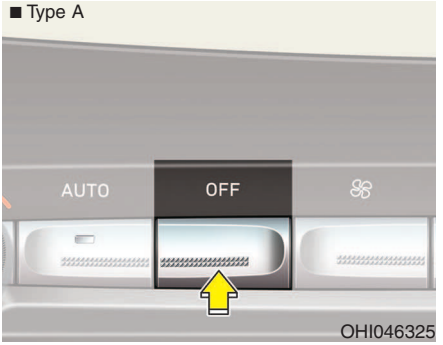
Push the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Push the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

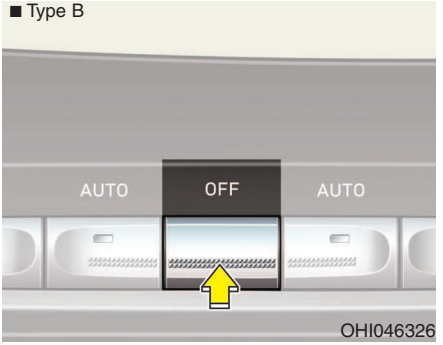
### *i* Information

**When AUTO mode and the desired temperature have been selected, the climate control system will select the A/C operation automatically. The A/C button is not illuminated at all times during AUTO mode operation.**

### *OFF mode*



OHI046325



OHI046326

Push the OFF button to turn off the climate control system.

## System operation

### *Ventilation*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

### *Heating*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

### Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

### *Air conditioning*

Genesis Branded Vehicle Air Conditioning Systems are filled with refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

* : Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of the engine room. Refer to chapter 8 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

**NOTICE**

- **The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.**
- **The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.**
- **The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard**

J2842.

## Information

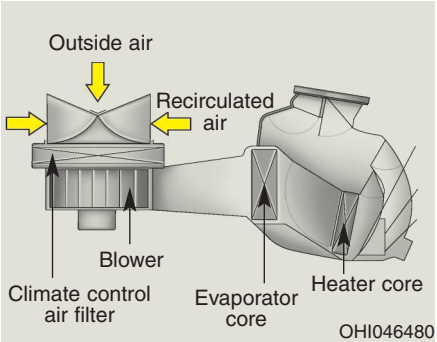
- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

### Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Use air conditioning to reduce humidity and moisture inside the vehicle on rainy or humid days.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

## System maintenance

### *Climate control air filter*



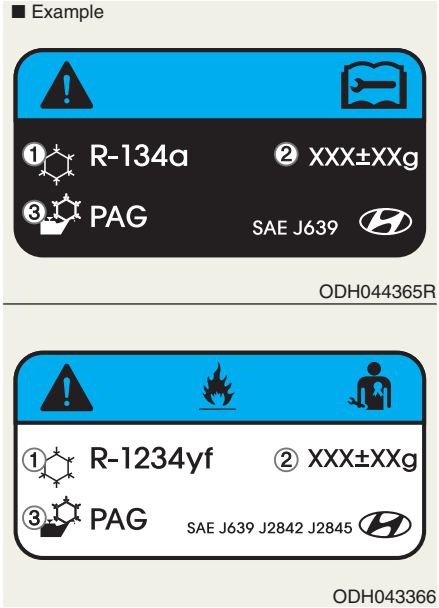

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Information

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**

  **If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Air Conditioning refrigerant label*




The actual Air Conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbols and specification on air conditioning refrigerant label means as below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the hood.

### *Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant*

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Vehicles equipped with R-134a**

**Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.**

**Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf**

**Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.**

**Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.**

# WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

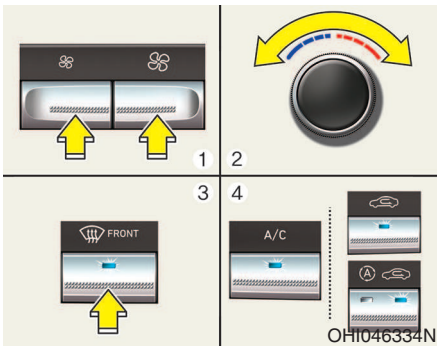
**⚠ WARNING**

**- Windshield heating**

**Do not use the ⛐ or ⛐ position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the ⛐ position and fan speed control to the lower speed.**

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.

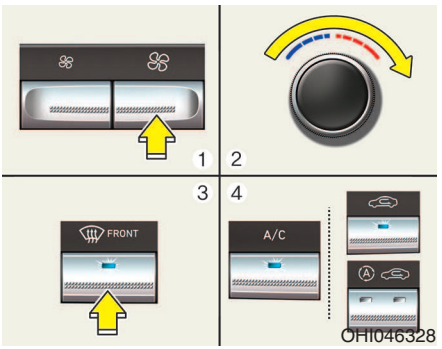
### *To defog inside windshield*




1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button (⛐).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

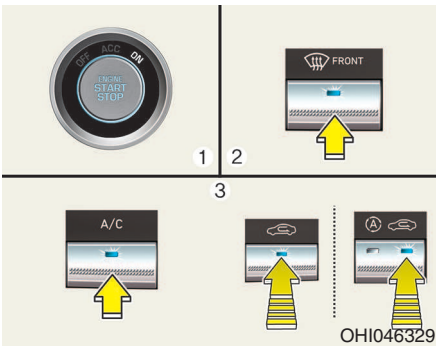
If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the ⛐ position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

### *To defrost outside windshield*




1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

### *Defogging logic*




To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel or return the defogging logic, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
2. Select the defrost position pressing defrost button ( ).
3. While holding the air conditioning button (A/C) pressed, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator on the air intake control button blinks 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the system resets to the preprogrammed defogging logic.

### *Auto defogging system*

Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the climate control system is on.

- To cancel/reactivate the auto defogging system

1. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the front defroster button over 3 seconds.

The front defroster button indicator will blink 3 times and then ADS OFF will illuminate on the climate control LCD display when the auto defogging system is canceled.

- To reactivate the auto defogging system

1. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the front defroster button over 3 seconds.
3. The front defroster button indicator will blink 6 times and then ADS OFF will go out on the climate control LCD display when the auto defogging system is reactivated.

### Information

**The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C.**

This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture of inside the windshield and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

Step 1 : Outside air position

Step 2 : Operating the air conditioning

Step 3 : Blowing air flow toward the windshield

Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windshield

# CLIMATE CONTROL ADDITIONAL FEATURES (IF EQUIPPED)

## Clean air

When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the clean air function turns on automatically.

Also, the clean air function turns off automatically, when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.

## Automatic ventilation

The system automatically selects the outside (fresh) air position when the climate control system operates over a certain period of time (approximately 30 minutes) in low temperature with the recirculated air position selected.

### *To cancel or reactivate the Automatic Ventilation*

When the air conditioning system is on, select Face Level mode and press the recirculated air position button for more than 3 seconds.

When the automatic ventilation is canceled, the indicator blinks 3 times. When the automatic ventilation is activated, the indicator blinks 6 times.

## Sunroof inside air recirculation

The outside (fresh) air position is automatically selected, when the sunroof is opened while operating the heating/air conditioning system.

When you select the recirculated air position, the system maintains the recirculated air position for 3 minutes and then automatically converts to the outside (fresh) air position.

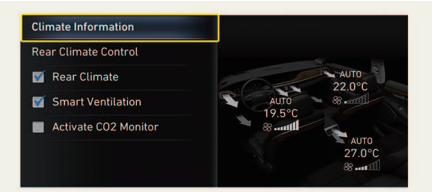
When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

## Setting the climate control system on the DIS navigation system monitor

Using the DIS Navigation System monitor, press 'Setup → Climate'.

The Climate settings screen will be displayed.

### *Climate information*




OHI046201L

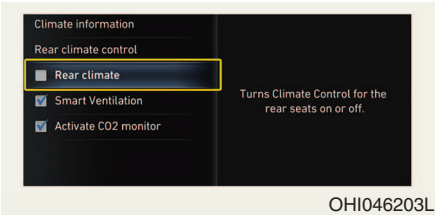
Climate information (e.g. temperature, air-flow direction, fan speed, etc.) of the driver's/front passenger's/rear seats is displayed.

### *Adjusting the rear climate control system*

OHI046202L

Select 'Rear Climate Control' and then adjust the temperature, fan speed and mode selection.

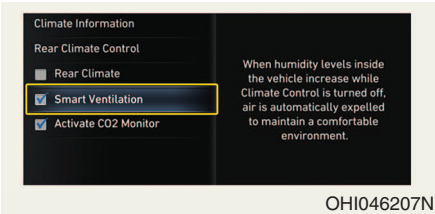
### *Rear climate control system ON/OFF*




OHI046203L

Check the box next to 'Rear Climate' to turn on the rear climate control system and uncheck the box to turn off the system.

### *Smart ventilation*




OHI046207N

The smart ventilation system maintains pleasant/fresh air condition inside the passenger compartment by automatically detecting/controlling the temperature, humidity, etc., when you drive the vehicle with the climate control system in the OFF position. When the smart ventilation system starts to operate, the message, "SMART VENTILATION ON" appears for 5 seconds.

### Information

- **The smart ventilation system stops operating, when the OFF button of the climate control system is selected.**
- **The smart ventilation system stops operating, when any button of the climate control system is selected for operation.**

**(Continued)**

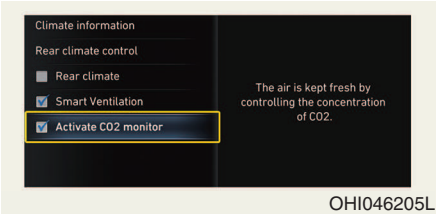
**(Continued)**

- **The smart ventilation system may not operate, when the vehicle is driven at low speed.**

**NOTICE**

**Pay extreme caution not to damage the CO2 sensor, which is located inside the glove box undercover.**

### *Activate CO2 monitor (if equipped)*




OHI046205L

When driving, the climate control system controls CO2 concentration and maintains pleasant air in the vehicle.

Check the box next to 'Activate CO2 monitor' to turn on the function and uncheck the box to turn off the function.

**For more information on the features described, refer to the separately supplied DIS Navigation System manual.**

# STORAGE COMPARTMENT

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely while driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.**

***NOTICE***

**To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.**

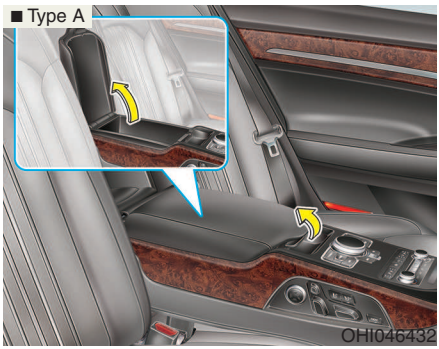
## Center console storage

To open :

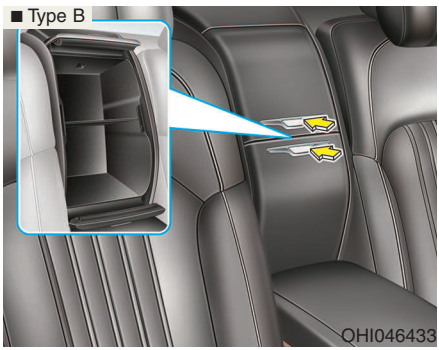
Press the button.

## Rear console storage

■ Type A



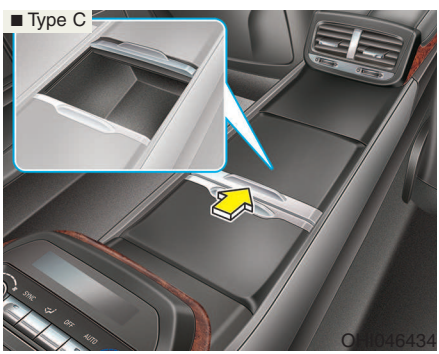

■ Type B




To open :

Press the button.

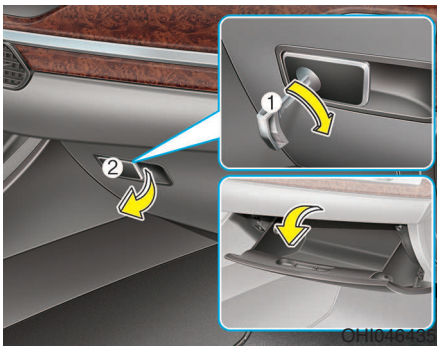
■ Type C




To open :

Push the cover forward.

## Glove box




The glove box can be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key (1).

To open:

Pull the lever (2).

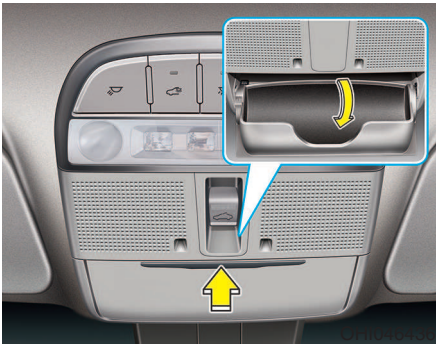
Make sure the glove box is closed while driving.

**⚠ WARNING**

**ALWAYS close the glove box after use.**

**An open glove box can cause serious injury to the passenger in an accident, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.**

## Sunglass holder (if equipped)



To open:

Press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

Make sure the sunglass holder is closed while driving.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglass holder while the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed.**

## Cellular phone holder

To open:

Push the cover.

**NOTICE**

**Items other than a cellular phone may not fit inside the cellular phone storage in accordance with its size or shape. Do not forcefully push items into the cellular phone storage and close the cover. It may damage or distort those items. In addition, do not forcefully open the cellular phone storage cover, when it is jammed with a stored item inside.**

## Wireless cellular phone charging system (if equipped)

■ Front

■ Rear

There are two wireless cellular phone charging systems both inside the front console and inside the rear console. Those are available when all doors are closed, and when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC/ON position.

### *To charge a cellular phone*

The wireless cellular phone charging systems charge only the Qi-enabled cellular phones ( Qi ). Read the label on the cellular phone accessory cover or visit your cellular phone manufacturer's website to check whether your cellular phone supports the Qi technology.

• Front seats

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled cellular phone on the wireless charging unit.

• Rear seats

The wireless charging process starts when you fully insert a Qi-enabled cellular phone over the flipping cover of the wireless charging unit.

1. Remove other items, including the smart key, from the wireless charging unit. If not, the wireless charging process may be interrupted.
2. The indicator illuminates in orange during the charging process. The indicator color changes to green, when the charging process is completed.
3. You can turn ON or OFF the wireless charging function in the user settings mode on the instrument cluster. (For further information, refer to the "LCD Modes" in this chapter.)

Slightly change the cellular phone position, when the cellular phone is not being charged. Make sure that the indicator illuminates in orange. The indicator color may not change to green in accordance with the cellular phone type, even though the charging process is completed. The indicator blinks in orange for 10 seconds when there is a malfunction with the wireless charging system. In this case, temporarily stop the charging process, and re-attempt to wirelessly charge your cellular phone again.

The system warns you with a message on the LCD display when you do not take out the cellular phone from the wireless charging unit with the door open and the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

**NOTICE**

- **The wireless cellular phone charging system may not support certain cellular phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification ( Qi ).**
- **Locate your cell phone well in the middle of the wireless cellular phone charging system. Even when your cell phone locates slightly to one side, the charging speed may decrease.**
- **The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when a smart key function operates (i.e. starting the engine, opening the doors, closing the doors).**
- **For certain cell phones, the indicator color may not change to green, even when the wireless charging process is properly completed.**

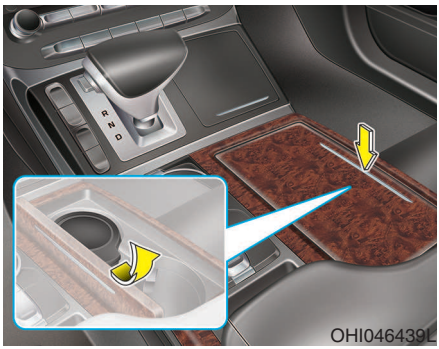
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless cellular phone charging system. The wireless charging process restarts, when temperature falls to a proper level.**
- **The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless cellular phone charging system and a cellular phone.**

# INTERIOR FEATURES

## Ashtray (if equipped)




To open cover:

Press the cover and it will slowly open.

To clean the ashtray:

The plastic receptacle should be removed by lifting the plastic ashtray receptacle upward and pulling it out.

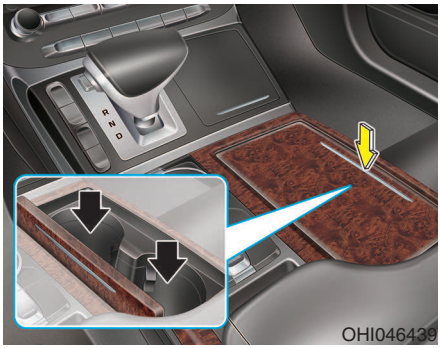
**⚠ WARNING**

**Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

## Cup holder

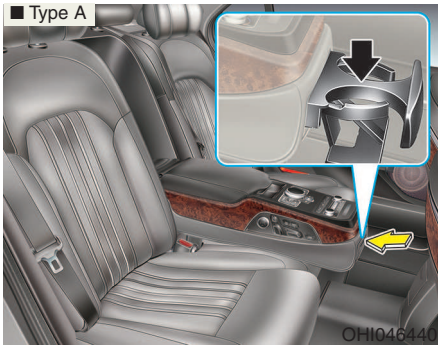
You can also store cups or small beverage cans inside.

### *Front seats*



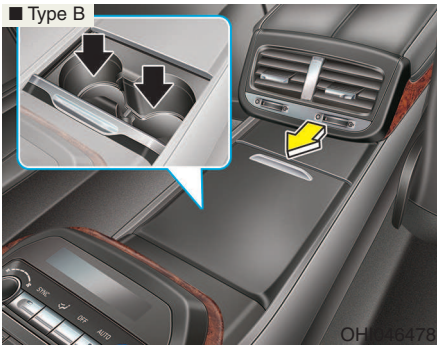

Press the button to open the cover.

### *Rear seats*

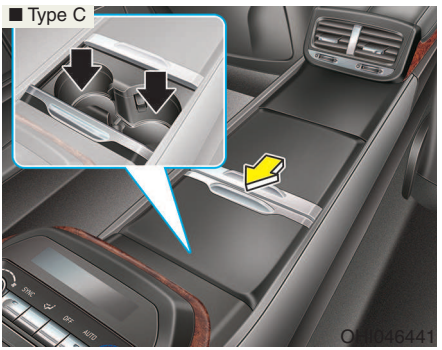



Press the button to open the cover.

■ Type B




■ Type C




Pull up the handle to open the cover.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is in use to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid while the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may result in the event of sudden stop or collision.**
- **Only use soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in an accident.**

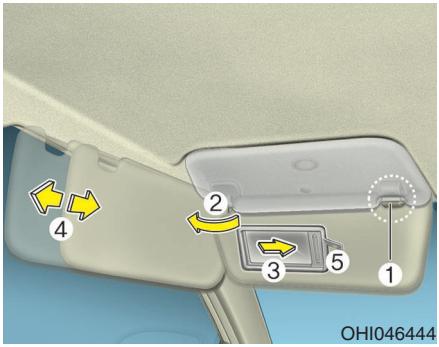
**⚠ WARNING**

**Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. It may explode.**

***NOTICE***

- **Keep your drinks sealed while driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the chrome part of the cup holder.**

## Sunvisor




To use a sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use a sunvisor for a side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or backward (4) as needed. Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

### Information

**Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.**

**WARNING**

**For your safety, do not block your view when using the sunvisor.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not put several tickets in the ticket holder at one time. This could cause damage to the ticket holder.**
- **Avoid putting a plastic card such as a credit card in the ticket holder located in the outside of the sunvisor. This could cause damage to the plastic card.**

## Rear vanity mirror

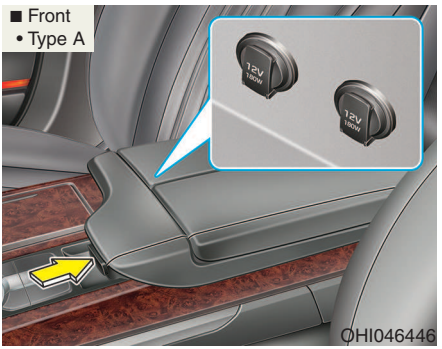
Press the cover to open the rear vanity mirror. Push up the cover to close the rear vanity mirror.

**NOTICE**

**Make sure to close the rear vanity mirror cover after use. If not, the rear vanity mirror lamp remains ON, possibly draining the battery or damaging the rear vanity mirror.**

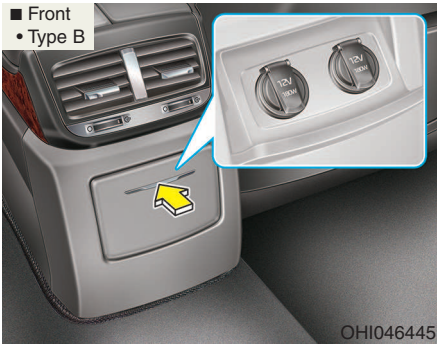
## Power outlet (if equipped)

■ Front
• Type A




OHI046446

■ Front
• Type B

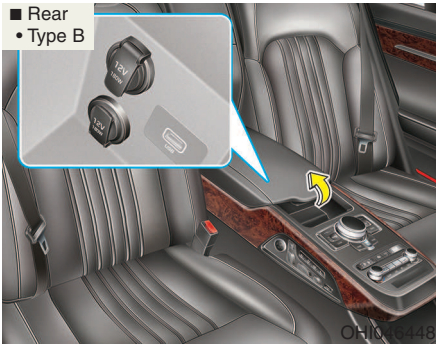



OHI046445

■ Rear
• Type A

OHI046447

■ Rear
• Type B




OHI046448

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 180 W(Watt) with the engine running.

**⚠ WARNING**

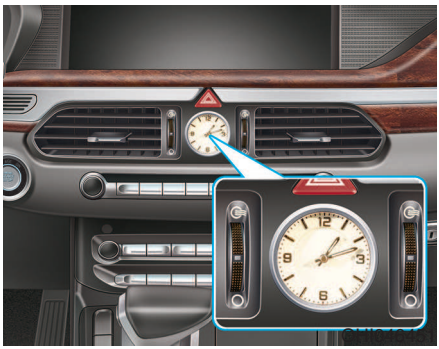
**Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with wet hands.**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the Power Outlets :**

- **Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 180 W(Watt) in electric capacity.**
- **Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.**
- **Close the cover when not in use.**
- **Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.**
- **Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.**
- **Plug in battery equipped electrical/electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.**

## Clock



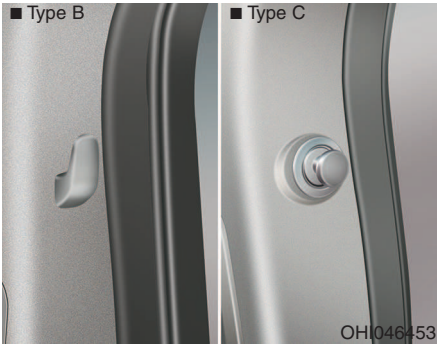
You can set the clock by using the DIS Navigation System.

For more information, refer to the separately supplied manual.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the clock while driving. You may lose your steering control and cause an accident that results in severe personal injury or death.**

## Clothes hanger (if equipped)




These hangers are not designed to hold large or heavy items.

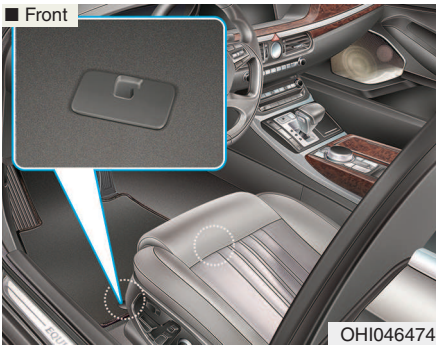
**⚠ WARNING**

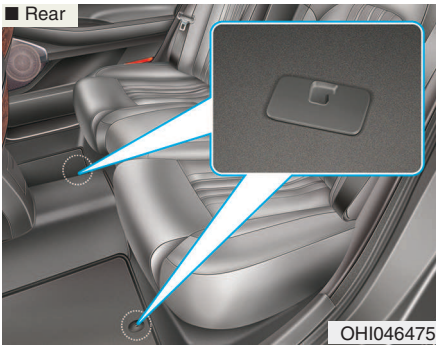
**Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.**

## Bag hanger (if equipped)

Pull the strap (1) to hang a bag on the hook (2). Fold the hook when not in use.

## Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)



ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

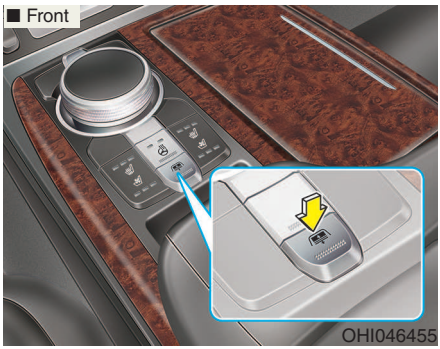
**The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.**

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

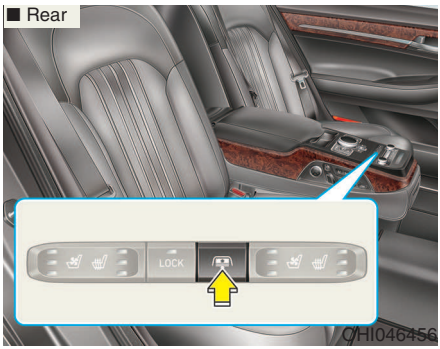
**IMPORTANT - Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that the Genesis/ HYUNDAI floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.**

## Rear curtain

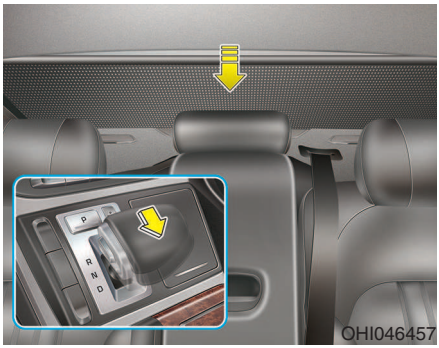
■ Front




■ Rear




To raise and lower the rear curtain, press the button.




The rear curtain will be lowered automatically when you shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) and raised automatically when you shift the shift lever from R (Reverse) into P (Park).

After the rear curtain is lowered by shifting into R (Reverse), if you drive more than 20 km/h (12 mph) with the shift lever in D (Drive), the rear curtain will be raised automatically.

The rear curtains may stop operating in the position and move to the reverse direction, when its opening/closing operation is interrupted.

**NOTICE**

**Do not apply excessive force while operating the rear curtain. This could cause damage to the rear curtain.**

## Rear door window curtain

■ Driver's window switch

■ Rear window switch

You can raise/lower the rear door window curtain by operating the power window switches, which is located on the driver's door and the rear doors.

The switch on the driver's door also operates the rear door curtains.

### *Power window switch (1)*

To operate the rear door window curtain on the right side.

### *Power window switch (2)*

To operate the rear door window curtain on the left side.

1. Fully close the rear window by pulling up the power window switch.
2. Pull up the power window switch again to move the rear door window curtain.
3. When you want to open the rear window with the curtain raised up you should lower the rear door window curtain and then open the rear window by pushing down the power window switch.

The power window switch on the driver's door operates in the same manner.

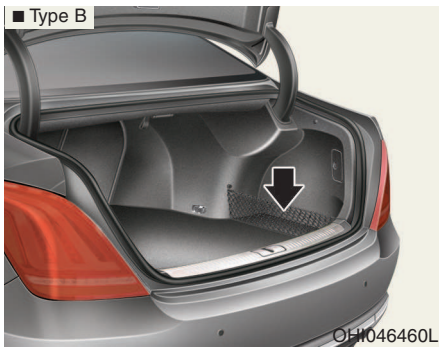
**NOTICE**

- **If resistance is detected during upward/downward movement of the rear door window curtain, the rear door window curtain stops moving and then starts to move in a reverse direction.**
- **Do not apply excessive external force on the rear door window curtain while operating. It may cause a malfunction.**

## Luggage net holder

■ Type A

■ Type B




To keep items from shifting in the trunk, you can use the holders located in the trunk to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the trunk.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to obtain a luggage net.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.**

# Multimedia system

Multimedia system .....4-2
AUX, USB and iPod® port .....4-2
Antenna .....4-3
Steering wheel audio control .....4-4
DIS navigation system .....4-5
*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology hands-free .....4-5

4

# MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM

Detailed information about the multimedia system is described in a separately supplied manual.

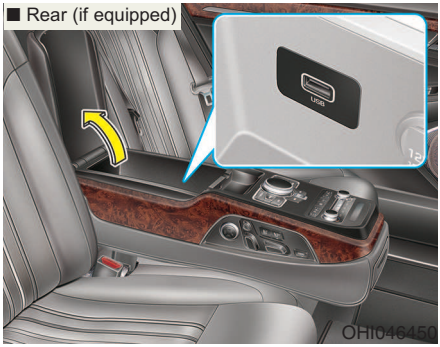
### Information

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**

## AUX, USB and iPod® port

■ Front

■ Rear (if equipped)



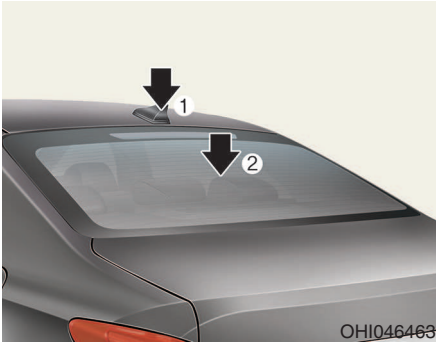

You can use an AUX port to connect audio devices and USB port to plug in USB and also in iPod® port. (Rear multimedia jack : USB only)

### Information

**When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.**

※ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

## Antenna




### *Combination antenna (1) (for Europe, if equipped)*

The combination fin antenna will receive the transmit data. (for example : GPS and DAB signal)

### *Glass antenna (2)*

Your vehicle uses a glass antenna to receive both AM and FM signals.

**NOTICE**

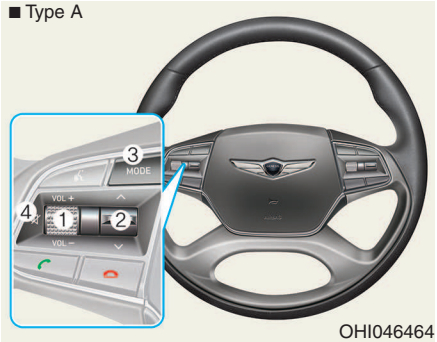
- **Do not clean the inside of the rear window glass with a cleaner or use a scraper to remove foreign deposits as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.**
- **Avoid adding metallic coatings such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can degrade the receiving AM and FM broadcast signals.**

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to the rear glass antenna, never use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the window. Clean the inside surface of the rear glass window with a piece of soft cloth.**
- **When putting a sticker on the inside surface of the rear window, be careful not to damage to the rear glass antenna.**
- **Do not put sharp instruments nearby the rear glass antenna.**
- **Tinted rear window may affect the proper functioning of the antenna.**

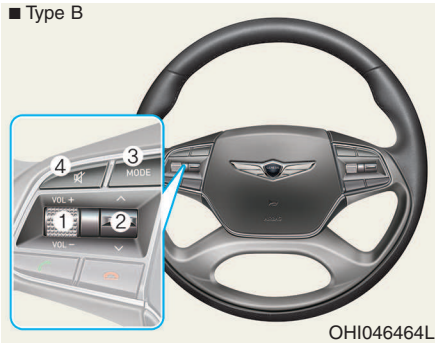
## Steering wheel audio control

■ Type A




OHI046464

■ Type B




OHI046464L

The steering wheel audio control switch installed for your convenience.

**NOTICE**

**Do not operate audio remote control switches simultaneously.**

### *VOLUME (VOL + / - ) (1)*

- Move the VOLUME switch up to increase volume.
- Move the VOLUME switch down to decrease volume.

### *SEEK ( ∧ / ∨ ) (2)*

If the SEEK switch is moved up or down and held for 0.8 second or more, it will function in the following modes.

#### RADIO mode

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select switch. It will SEEK until you release the button.

#### MEDIA mode

It will function as the FF/REW switch.

If the SEEK switch is moved up or down, it will function in the following modes.

#### RADIO mode

It will function as the PRESET STATION UP/DOWN switch.

#### MEDIA mode

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN switch.

### *MODE (3)*

Press the MODE button to select Radio, JUKEBOX, USB(iPod), or AUX.

### *MUTE ( 🔇 ) (4)*

- Press the MUTE button to mute the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

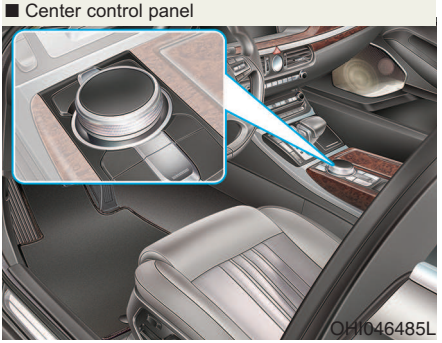
### *i* Information

**Detailed information is described in a separately supplied manual.**

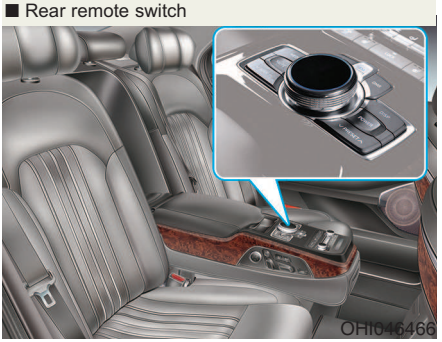
## DIS navigation system

■ Front (Switch and Monitor)

■ Center control panel

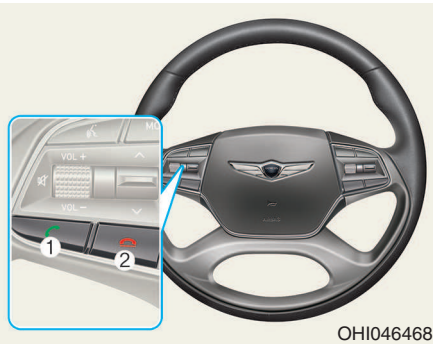



■ Rear remote switch




Detailed information for the DIS navigation system is described in a separately supplied manual.

## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology hands-free



You can use the phone wirelessly by using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) Call / Answer button
(2) Call end button
(3) Microphone

Detailed information for the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology hands-free is described in a separately supplied manual.

# Driving your vehicle


Before driving ..... 5-5
Before entering the vehicle ..... 5-5
Before starting ..... 5-5
Engine start/stop button ..... 5-6
Automatic transmission ..... 5-11
Automatic transmission operation ..... 5-11
Parking ..... 5-16
LCD display messages ..... 5-17
Good driving practices ..... 5-19
All wheel drive (AWD) ..... 5-21
Using all wheel drive (AWD) ..... 5-21
Emergency precautions ..... 5-23
Braking system ..... 5-25
Power brakes ..... 5-25
Disc brakes wear indicator ..... 5-26
Electronic parking brake (EPB) ..... 5-26
Auto hold ..... 5-31
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ..... 5-35
Electronic stability control (ESC) ..... 5-36
Vehicle stability management (VSM) ..... 5-39
Hill-start assist control (HAC) ..... 5-41
Emergency stop signal (ESS) ..... 5-41
Good braking practices ..... 5-42
Genesis adaptive control suspension ..... 5-43
Electronic control suspension (ECS) ..... 5-43
Dynamic Stability Damping Control (DSDC) ..... 5-43
Drive mode integrated control system ..... 5-44
Blind spot detection system (BSD) ..... 5-49
BSD (Blind spot detection) / LCA (Lane change assist) ..... 5-50
RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) ..... 5-53
Limitations of the system ..... 5-55
Smart blind spot detection system ..... 5-56
Limitations of the system ..... 5-57

Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) .....5-60
System setting and activation .....5-60
AEB warning message and system control .....5-62
AEB front radar sensor .....5-64
System malfunction .....5-65
Limitations of the system .....5-67
Cruise control .....5-71
Cruise control operation .....5-71
Smart cruise control speed .....5-72
Advanced smart cruise control system .....5-76
To adjust the sensitivity of smart cruise control .....5-78
To convert to cruise control mode .....5-78
Smart cruise control speed .....5-79
Smart cruise control vehicle-to-vehicle distance .....5-84
Sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead .....5-87
Limitations of the system .....5-89
Lane departure warning system (LDWS) .....5-93
LDWS operation .....5-94
Warning light and message .....5-95
Limitations of the system .....5-96
Lane keeping assist system (LKAS) .....5-97
LKAS operation .....5-98
Warning light and message .....5-102
LKAS function change .....5-103
Limitations of the system .....5-104
Driver attention alert system (DAA) .....5-105
System setting and activation .....5-105
Resetting the system .....5-107
System standby .....5-107
System malfunction .....5-108

# Driving your vehicle


Special driving conditions ..... 5-110
Hazardous driving conditions ..... 5-110
Rocking the vehicle ..... 5-110
Smooth cornering ..... 5-111
Driving at night ..... 5-111
Driving in the rain ..... 5-112
Driving in flooded areas ..... 5-112
Highway driving ..... 5-112
Winter driving ..... 5-113
Snow or icy conditions ..... 5-113
Winter precaution ..... 5-115
Vehicle weight ..... 5-117
Overloading ..... 5-117
Trailer towing ..... 5-118

**⚠ WARNING**

**Carbon monoxide (CO) gas is toxic. Breathing CO can cause unconsciousness and death.**

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide which cannot be seen or smelled.

**Do not inhale engine exhaust.**

If at any time you smell engine exhaust inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

**Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the exhaust system be checked as soon as possible by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**

Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Run the engine only long enough to start the engine and to move the vehicle out of the garage.

**Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.**

If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan control set to high so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

**Keep the air intakes clear.**

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, keep the ventilation air intakes located in front of the windshield clear of snow, ice, leaves, or other obstructions.

**If you must drive with the trunk open:**

Close all windows.

Open instrument panel air vents.

Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face", and the fan control set to high.

# BEFORE DRIVING

## Before entering the vehicle

- Be sure all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tires for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

## Before starting

- Make sure the hood, the trunk, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seatbelt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the instrument display when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:**

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to "Seat Belts" in chapter 2.**
- **Always drive defensively. Assume other drivers or pedestrians may be careless and make mistakes.**
- **Stay focused on the task of driving. Driver distraction can cause accidents.**
- **Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER drink or take drugs and drive.**

**Drinking or taking drugs and driving is dangerous and may result in an accident and SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH.**

**Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.**

**You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive. If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.**

## Engine Start/Stop button

Whenever the front door is opened, the Engine Start/Stop button will illuminate and will go off 30 seconds after the door is closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce risk of serious injury or death, NEVER allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the Engine Start/Stop button or related parts. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To turn the engine off in an emergency:**

**Press and hold the Engine Start/Stop button for more than two seconds OR Rapidly press and release the Engine Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).**

**If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER press the Engine Start/Stop button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This will result in the engine turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the Smart Key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **NEVER reach through the steering wheel for the Engine Start/Stop button or any other control while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

### *Engine Stop/Start button positions*

OFF

To turn off the engine, press the Engine Start/Stop button with shift lever in P (Park).

Also, the engine will turn off when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed with the shift lever in D (Drive) or R (Reverse) because the transmission automatically shifts to the P (Park) position. But, when it is pressed in N (Neutral), the Engine Start/Stop button will go to the ACC position.

The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft.

#### Information

**If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound.**

ACC

Press the Engine Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

Some of the electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.

#### Information

**If you leave the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position for more than one hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging.**

**If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the Engine Start/Stop button will not work. Press the Engine Start/Stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left to release tension.**

ON

Press the Engine Start/Stop button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started.

#### Information

**Do not leave the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position when the engine is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.**

START

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or in the N (Neutral) position.

For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

#### Information

**If you press the Engine Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal, the engine does not start and the Engine Start/Stop button changes as follows:**

**OFF → ACC → ON → OFF**

**However, the engine may start if you depress the brake pedal within 0.5 second after pressing the Engine Start/Stop button when it is in the OFF position.**

### *Starting the engine*

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle.**

  **Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, flip-flops, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed.**

  **The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.**

**i Information**

- **The engine will start by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**
- **Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from the driver, the engine may not start.**
- **When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the warning, "Key not in vehicle" will come on and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when using the ACC position or if the vehicle engine is ON.**

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the shift lever is in P (Park).
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5 Press the Engine Start/Stop button.

**i Information**

**Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)**

**i Information**

**Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the vehicle. Do not race the engine while warming it up.**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the vehicle:**

- **If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position.**

  **If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and press the Engine Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.**
- **Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the engine.**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the vehicle:**

**When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you can't start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the engine by pressing and holding the Engine Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position.**

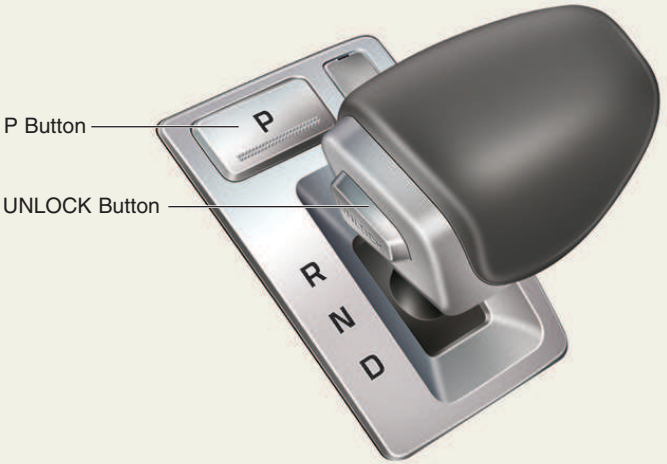
**Do not press the Engine Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.**

**For your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.**

## Information

**If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key in the direction of the picture above.**

# AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION




When you move the shift lever, depress the brake pedal while pressing the UNLOCK button.

OHI056010L

## Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has eight forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:**

- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **Do not use engine braking (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.**

### *Transmission ranges*

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

However, if the gear is in N (Neutral) or P (Park), the position is displayed on the instrument cluster when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF or ACC position.

### P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift the gear from R (Reverse), N (Neutral), D (Drive) or Manual mode to P (Park), press the [P] button.

If you turn off the engine in D (Drive), R (Reverse) or Manual mode the shifting automatically changes to P (Park).

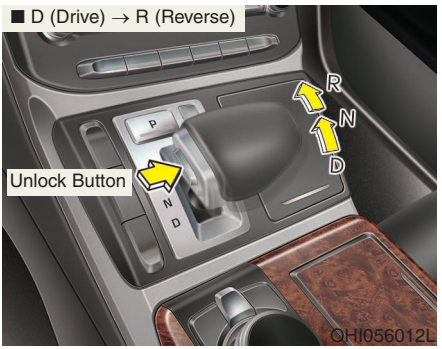
When you park the vehicle, press the [P] button while depressing the brake pedal and then apply the parking brake.

**⚠ WARNING**

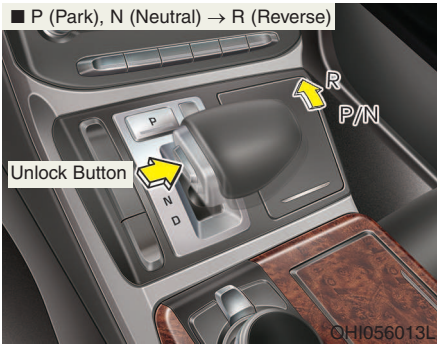
- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the shift lever is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.**

## R (Reverse)

■ D (Drive) → R (Reverse)




■ P (Park), N (Neutral) → R (Reverse)

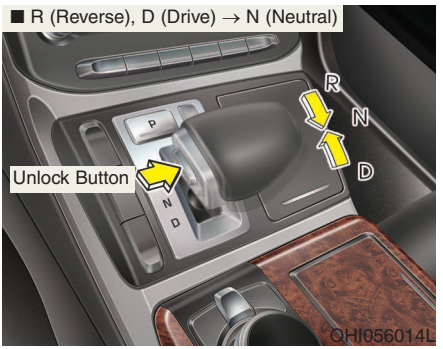



Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

To move the shift lever to R (Reverse), press the [UNLOCK] button while depressing the brake pedal and then move the shift lever forward.

## N (Neutral)

■ R (Reverse), D (Drive) → N (Neutral)




The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop with the engine ON. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

In N (Neutral), if the driver attempts to turn off the engine, the transmission remains in the N (Neutral) position and the Engine Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position.

To turn off the engine from the ACC position, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position, press the [P] button, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

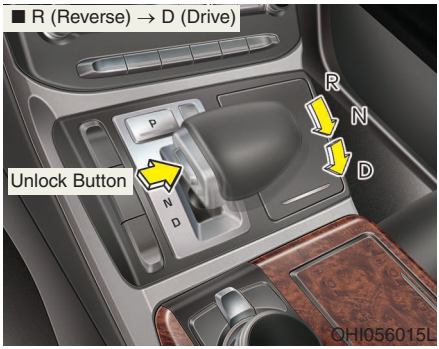
When either the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position and the shift lever in N (Neutral) position, the engine is automatically turned OFF and the transmission automatically changes to the P (Park) position.

**⚠ WARNING**

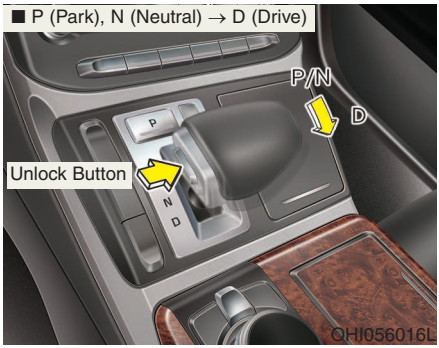
- **Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Use the N (Neutral) position to idle a vehicle for an extended period of time. The wheels and the transmission are not engaged. While parking the vehicle with the engine running, depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.**
- **Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral). Doing so may result in an accident because of a loss of engine braking and the transmission could be damaged.**

### D (Drive)

■ R (Reverse) → D (Drive)




■ P (Park), N (Neutral) → D (Drive)




This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 8-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill, depress the accelerator pedal further until you feel the transmission downshift to a lower gear.

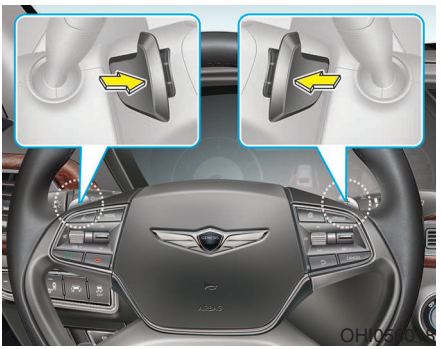
To shift into D (Drive), depress the brake pedal and press the [UNLOCK] button on the shift Lever. Move the shift lever backward.

To shift into D (Drive) from N (Neutral), you must depress the brake pedal.

**NOTICE**

**Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**

### *Paddle shifter (Manual mode)*




The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D (Drive) position.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

To change back to the automatic mode from manual mode, do one of the following:

- Move the shift lever down.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds.
- Drive the vehicle under 7 km/h (4 mph).
- Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter .

#### Information

**If the [+] and [-] paddle shifters are pulled at the same time, gear shift may not occur.**

### *Shift-lock system*

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift-lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the [UNLOCK] button is pressed while depressing the brake pedal.

To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or place the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever to R (Reverse) or D (Drive) while pressing the [UNLOCK] button.

***When the battery is discharged:***

You cannot move the shift lever, when the battery is discharged.

In emergencies, do the following to move the shift lever to N (Neutral) on a level ground.

1. Connect the battery cables from another vehicle or from a another battery to the jump-starting terminals inside the engine compartment.

   **For more information refer to "Jump Starting" in chapter 6.**

2. Release the parking brake with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
3. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
4. Remove the cap-cover (1) and press the button (2) while depressing the brake pedal. Then, the gear will change to the N (Neutral) position. The button (2) should be pressed within 3 minutes after turning OFF the engine. In addition, the button (2) operates only for 20 seconds to change the gear between N (Neutral) and P (Park) from the time when the button (2) is first pressed.

### *i* Information

**In situations when the gear needs to be changed from P (Park) to N (Neutral) when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, refer to step 4.**

## Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Move the shift lever into the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position. Take the Key with you when exiting the vehicle.

### ⚠ WARNING

- **When you stay in the vehicle with the engine running, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. The engine or exhaust system may overheat and start a fire.**
- **The exhaust gas and the exhaust system are very hot. Keep away from the exhaust system components.**
- **Do not stop or park over flammable materials, such as dry grass, paper or leaves. They may ignite and cause a fire.**

## LCD display messages

### *Shifter Malfunction*

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the transmission or the shift lever does not properly operate in the P (Park) position. In this case, we recommend you to immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Check shift lever*

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when there is a malfunction with one of the key transmission shifter components.

In this case, we recommend you to immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Shifting conditions not met*

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when engine RPM is too high, or when driving speed is too fast to shift the gear.

We recommend you decrease the engine speed or slow down before shifting the gear.

### *Press brake pedal to change gear*

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the brake pedal is not depressed while shifting the gear.

We recommend you to depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

### *Shift to P after stopping*

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the brake pedal is not depressed while shifting the gear.

We recommend you depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

### *Press UNLOCK to change gear*

The warning message appears on the LCD display, when the [UNLOCK] button is not pressed while shifting the gear. We recommend you press the [UNLOCK] button and then shift the gear.

### *PARK engaged*

The message appears on the LCD display, when the P (Park) position is engaged.

### *NEUTRAL engaged*

The message appears on the LCD display, when the N (Neutral) position is engaged.

## Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

  Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not move the shift lever to N (Neutral) when driving. Doing so may result in an accident because of a loss of engine braking and the transmission could be damaged.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Depressing both accelerator and brake pedals at the same time can trigger logic for engine power reduction to assure vehicle deceleration. Vehicle acceleration will resume after the brake pedal is released.
- When driving in Manual mode with the paddle shifter, slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged if the engine rpms are outside of the allowable range.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:**

- **ALWAYS wear your seatbelt. In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends you follow all posted speed limits.**

### Information - Kickdown Mechanism

**Use the kickdown mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.**

# ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) (IF EQUIPPED)

## Using All Wheel Drive (AWD)

The All Wheel Drive (AWD) System delivers engine power to front and rear wheels for maximum traction. AWD is useful when extra traction is required, such as when driving slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads.

If the system determines there is a need for addition traction, engines power will automatically be distributed to all four wheels.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the AWD warning light ( ) stays on the instrument cluster, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the AWD system. When the AWD warning light ( ) illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:**

- **Do not drive in conditions that exceed the vehicles intended design such as challenging off-road conditions.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

**i Information**

- **Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Depress the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking return.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" in chapter 7).**
- **Make sure that AWD vehicle is towed by a flatbed tow truck.**

### *For safe AWD operation*

#### Before driving

- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

#### Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use of snow tires are recommended. For more information on Snow Tires refer to "Winter Driving" in this chapter.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Use engine braking during deceleration.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to help prevent skids.

#### Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speed.
- Use tire chains driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Reduce vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

**NOTICE**

**When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud, place a non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse directions which causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle. However, avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm, doing so may damage the AWD system.**

**Information**

- **When using Snow Tires, mount them on the rear wheels.**
- **If tire chains must be used, use AutoSock (fabric snow chain) and install the tire chain after reviewing the instructions provided with the tire chains.**

**For more information on Snow Tires and Tire Chains, refer to "Winter Driving" in this chapter.**

### Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
  - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
  - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
  - Do not change gear while driving downhill. Select gear before driving downhill.
  - Drive as slowly using engine braking while driving downhill.
  - Drive straight as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may flip depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.**

## Emergency precautions

### *Tires*

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use tire and wheel with different size and type from the one originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.**

When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.

In an emergency situation, a compact spare tire may be used. But, do not use the compact spare tire continuously. Repair or replace the original tire as soon as possible to avoid failure of the differential or AWD system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never start or run the engine while an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby.**

### *Towing*

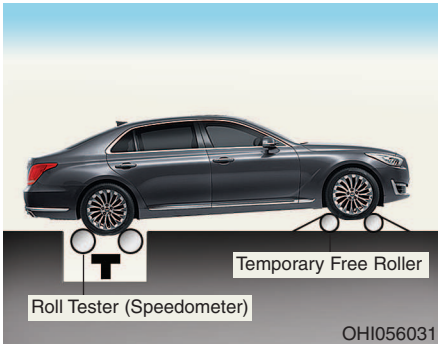
AWD vehicle must be towed with all four wheels off the ground, using a flatbed tow truck or wheel dollies. The AWD system could be damaged if improperly towed. For more information, refer to "Towing" in chapter 6.

### *Vehicle inspection*

- When the vehicle is on a car lift, do not operate the front and rear wheels separately. All four wheels should be operated.
- Never engage the parking brake while running the engine on a car lift. This may damage the AWD system.

### *Dynamometer testing*

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.




An AWD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following procedure:

1. Check the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Keep away from the front of the vehicle while the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.**

# BRAKING SYSTEM

## Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

If the engine is not running or is turned off while driving, the power assist for the brakes will not work. You can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than typical. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions:**

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, lightly tap the brake pedal to heat up the brakes while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal. Avoid driving at high speeds until the brakes function correctly.**

## Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

**NOTICE**

**To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.**

### Information

**Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.**

## Electronic parking brake (EPB)

### *Applying the parking brake*

**To apply the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):**

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Pull the EPB switch upwards.

Make sure the Parking Brake Warning Light comes on.

**NOTICE**

**With the AUTO HOLD feature enabled, the EPB is automatically applied when the engine is shut off.**

**However, if the EPB switch is pressed within 1 second of engine shut off, the EPB will not be applied.**

**WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.**

### *Releasing the parking brake*

**To release the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:**

- Have the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake Warning Light goes off.

**To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:**

- Shift lever in P (Park)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Under the following conditions
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine hood and trunk.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in D (Drive) or R (Reverse).

The Parking Brake Warning Light should be turned off when the EPB is released.

**Information**

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the Engine Stop/Start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

**NOTICE**

- **If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.**

**EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:**

- Requested by other systems
- The engine is turned off with the EPB applied

**Information**

**If the driver turns the engine off while Auto Hold is operating, EPB will be automatically applied. However, if you press the EPB switch within one second after the engine is turned off, the EPB will not be applied.**

### *Warning messages*

**To release EPB, fasten seatbelt, close door, hood, and trunk**

- If you try to drive with the EPB applied, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the engine hood or trunk is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

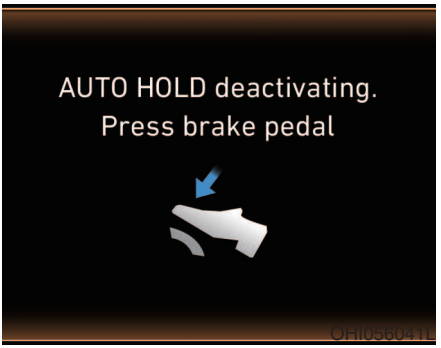
If the situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park).**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

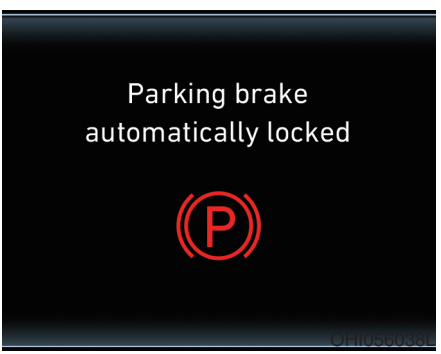
**NOTICE**

- **A click sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.**
- **When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.**
- **The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.**
- **When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.**




**AUTO HOLD deactivating. Press brake pedal**

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.




**Parking brake automatically locked**

If the EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

### *EPB malfunction indicator*

This warning light illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the Engine Start/Stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

**NOTICE**

- **If the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB may not be applied.**
- **If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Emergency braking*

If there is a problem with the brake pedal while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only while you are holding the EPB switch.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.**

**i Information**

**During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.**

**NOTICE**

**If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release

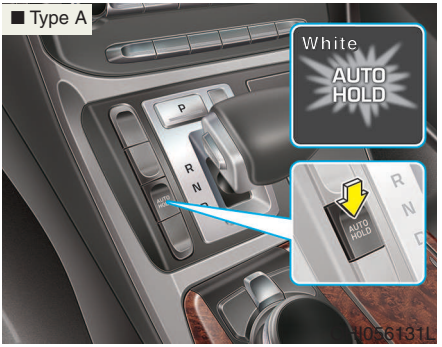
If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

## AUTO HOLD (if equipped)

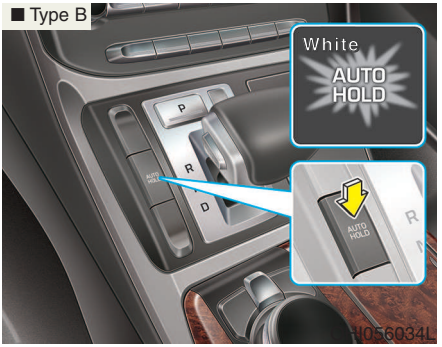
The Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

### *Set up*

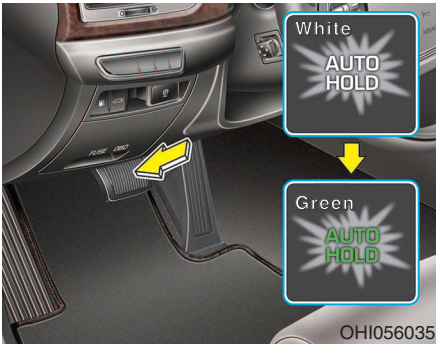
■ Type A




■ Type B




1. With the driver's door and engine hood closed, fasten the driver's seat belt or depress the brake pedal and then press the [AUTO HOLD] switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.




2. When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green.
3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

### Leaving

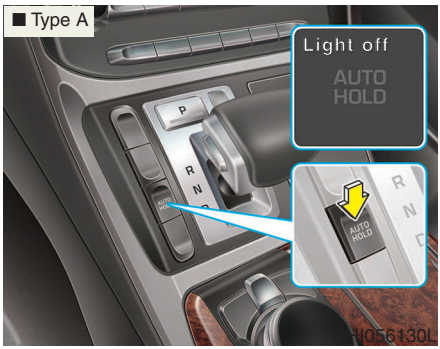
- If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in D (Drive), the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.
- If the vehicle is restarted using the advanced smart cruise control toggle switch (RES+ or SET-) while Auto Hold and advanced smart cruise control is operating, the Auto Hold will be released regardless of accelerator pedal operation. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

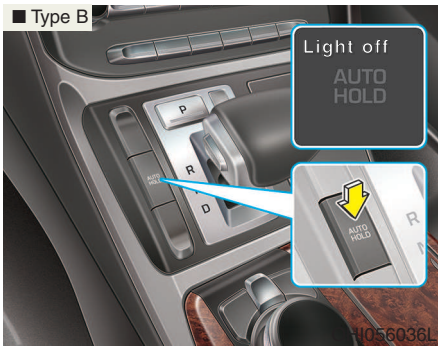
**⚠ WARNING**

**When driving off from Auto Hold by depressing the accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle.**

**Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.**

### *Cancel*




To cancel the Auto Hold operation, press the [AUTO HOLD] switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.

To cancel the Auto Hold operation when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the [AUTO HOLD] switch while depressing the brake pedal.

**ℹ Information**

- **The Auto Hold does not operate when:**
  - **The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The shift lever is in P (Park) or R (Reverse)**
  - **The EPB is applied**

**(Continued)**

(Continued)

- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB in such cases:
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened
  - The engine hood is opened while the shift lever is in D (Drive)
  - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope
  - The vehicle moved several times

  In these cases, the parking brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving again, depress the brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.
- If the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- While operating Auto Hold, you may hear mechanical noise. However, it is normal operating noise.

**⚠ WARNING**

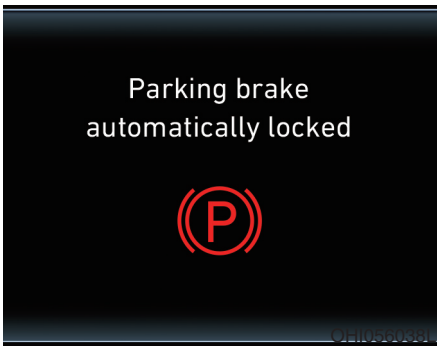
- **Depress the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.**
- **For your safety, cancel the Auto Hold when you drive downhill, back up the vehicle or park the vehicle.**

***NOTICE***

**If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or engine hood open detection system, the Auto Hold may not work properly.**

**We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Warning messages*




**Parking brake automatically locked**

When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

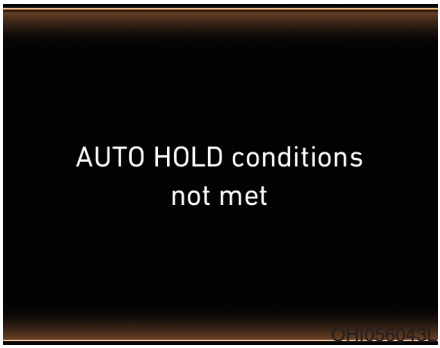
**AUTO HOLD deactivating. Press brake pedal**

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

Depress the brake pedal when the above message appears for the Auto Hold and EPB may not activate.

**Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD**

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.




**AUTO HOLD conditions not met**

When you press the [AUTO HOLD] switch, if the driver's door and engine hood are not closed or the driver's seat belt is not fastened, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the LCD display. In that time, press the [AUTO HOLD] switch after closing the driver's door, engine hood and fastening the seat belt.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

**⚠ WARNING**

**An Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for cars equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions.**

**Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:**

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**
- **Tire chains are installed on your vehicle.**

**The safety features of an ABS or ESC equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.**

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

### *Using ABS*

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Depress your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS warning light (ABS) will stay on for several seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the ABS warning light (ABS) is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes will work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact your an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

***NOTICE***

**When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light (ABS) may illuminate. Pull your car over to a safe place and turn the engine off.**

**Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.**

**Otherwise, you may have a problem with your ABS system. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

### *i* Information

**When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS warning light (ABS) may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

## Electronic Stability Control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the engine management system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. The ESC system will not prevent accidents.**

**Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can result in severe accidents.**

## *ESC operation*

### ESC ON condition

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately three seconds. After both lights go off, the ESC is enabled.

### When operating

When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.
- When the ESC activates, the engine may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If the Cruise Control was in use when the ESC activates, the Cruise Control automatically disengages. The Cruise Control can be reengaged when the road conditions allow. **See "Cruise Control System" later in this chapter.** (if equipped)
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

### ESC OFF condition

To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and message will illuminate. In this state, the traction control function of ESC (engine management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

• State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and message (Vehicles equipped with the AEB system, the AEB warning light ( ) illuminates. For more information, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)" in this chapter.) illuminates and a warning chime sounds. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (engine management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Engine Start/Stop button is placed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

### *Indicator lights*

■ ESC indicator light (blinks)

■ ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)

When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever the ESC is operating.

If ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the ESC is blinking, this indicates the ESC is active:**

**Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate. NEVER turn the ESC off while the ESC indicator light is blinking or you may lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.**

**NOTICE**

**Driving with wheels and tires with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tires, make sure all four tires and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tires installed.**

### *ESC OFF usage*

#### When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud by temporarily stopping operation of the ESC to maintain wheel torque.

To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the transmission:**

- **Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively while the ESC, ABS, and parking brake warning lights are displayed. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights are displayed.**
- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).**

**Information**

**Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.**

## Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) (if equipped)

The Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps ensure the vehicle stays stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tires can suddenly become uneven.

**WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the Vehicle Stability Management (VSM):**

- **ALWAYS check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. The VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices.**
- **Never drive too fast for the road conditions. The VSM system will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in bad weather, slippery and uneven roads can result in severe accidents.**

### *VSM operation*

#### VSM ON condition

The VSM operates when:

- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately above 15 km/h (9 mph) on curve roads.
- Vehicle speed is approximately above 20 km/h (12 mph) when the vehicle is braking on rough roads.

#### When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may activate the ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

**Information**

**The VSM does not operate when:**

- **Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline**
- **Driving rearward.**
- **ESC OFF indicator light is on.**
- **EPS (Electric Power Steering) warning light ( ) is on or blinks.**

#### VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF indicator light ( ) will illuminate.

To turn on VSM, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.

**WARNING**

**If ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light ( ) stays on or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.**

**NOTICE**

**Driving with wheels and tires with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tires, make sure all four tires and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tires and wheels installed.**

## Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) (if equipped)

The Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. The system operates the brakes automatically for approximately 2 seconds and releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after 2 seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always be ready to depress the accelerator pedal when starting off on a incline. The HAC activates only for approximately 2 seconds.**

### *i* Information

- **The HAC does not operate when the shift lever is in P (Park) or N (Neutral).**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off but does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

## Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) (if equipped)

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle is braked rapidly and severely.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops (vehicle speed is over 55km/h and the vehicle deceleration is greater than 7 $m/s^2$)
- The ABS is activating

When vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light will stop blinking. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when vehicle speed is over 10km/h after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle is driven at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

### *i* Information

**The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.**

## Good braking practices

**⚠ WARNING**

**Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Move the shift lever into the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position.**

**Vehicles with the parking brake not fully engaged are at risk for moving inadvertently and causing injury to yourself or others.**

Wet brakes can be dangerous! The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

# GENESIS ADAPTIVE CONTROL SUSPENSION (IF EQUIPPED)

## Electronic control suspension (ECS)

The Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) controls the vehicle suspension automatically to maximize driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements and acceleration.

### *ECS (Electronic Control Suspension) malfunction indicator*

If the ECS warning message comes on, you may have a problem with the ECS system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Dynamic Stability Damping Control (DSDC)

The Dynamic Stability Damping Control (DSDC) provides comfort riding and driving stability by meticulously optimizing the suspension power during sharp curving or abrupt obstacle avoidance.

### *Operating conditions*

- The DSDC is activated, when driving speed exceeds 50 km/h.
- The DSDC does not operate, when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is deactivated.

**NOTICE**

**The Dynamic Stability Damping Control (DSDC) does not operate, when there is a malfunction with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).**

**The Genesis adaptive control suspension operation is limited in following situations:**

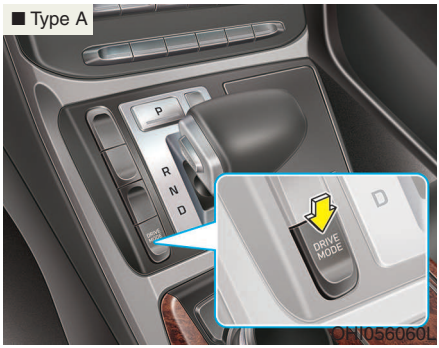
- **There are wide variations in tire pressures.**
- **The vehicle is driven on a steep slope.**
- **The vehicle is driven on a rough, rugged surface.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER install any tires/wheels in different sizes or of different models on your vehicle. It may cause a malfunction of the Dynamic Stability Damping Control (DSDC).**

# DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM

■ Type A




■ Type B

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE button is pressed.

- SMART mode :

  SMART mode automatically adjusts the driving mode (ECO ↔ NORMAL ↔ SPORT) in accordance with the driver's driving habits.
- SPORT mode :

  SPORT mode provides sporty but firm riding.
- ECO mode :

  ECO mode improves fuel efficiency for eco-friendly driving.
- INDIVIDUAL mode :

  The driver can separately adjust modes of each driving system.

The driving mode will be continuously maintained, as selected when the engine is restarted. However, except if it is in SPORT mode. SPORT mode will change to SMART mode, when the engine is restarted.

### *SMART mode*

SMART mode selects the proper driving mode among ECO, NORMAL, and SPORT by judging the driver's driving habits (i.e. mild or dynamic) from the brake pedal depression or the steering wheel operation.

- Press the DRIVE MODE button to activate SMART mode. When SMART mode is activated, the indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- The indicator illuminates in green, when the driver's driving is categorized to be mild. It illuminates in white, when the driver's driving is categorized to be normal. It illuminates in yellow, when the driver's driving is categorized to be dynamic during abrupt braking or sharp curving.
- The vehicle starts in SMART mode again, when the engine was turned OFF in SMART mode.
- SMART mode automatically controls the vehicle driving, such as gear shifting patterns, engine torque, riding quality (if equipped with the electronic suspension system), and power distribution (if equipped with the All-Wheel Drive (AWD) system), in accordance with the driver's driving habits.

### Information

- **When you mildly drive the vehicle in SMART mode, the driving mode changes to ECO mode to improve fuel efficiency. However, the actual fuel efficiency may differ in accordance with your driving situations (i.e. upward/downward slope, vehicle deceleration/acceleration).**
- **When you dynamically drive the vehicle in SMART mode by abruptly decelerating or sharply turning the driving mode changes to SPORT mode. However, it may adversely affect fuel economy.**

#### Various driving situations, which you may encounter in SMART mode

- The driving mode automatically changes to ECO mode after a certain period of time, when you gently depress the accelerator pedal (Your driving is categorized to be mild.).
- The driving mode automatically changes from SMART ECO mode to SMART NORMAL mode after a certain period of time, when you sharply or repetitively depress the accelerator pedal.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART NORMAL mode with the same driving patterns, when the vehicle starts to drive on an upward slope of a certain angle. The driving mode automatically returns to SMART ECO mode, when the vehicle enters a leveled road.

- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT, when you abruptly accelerate the vehicle or repetitively operate the steering wheel (Your driving is categorized to be sporty.). In this mode, your vehicle drives in a lower gear for abrupt accelerating/decelerating and increases the engine brake performance.
- You may still sense the engine braking performance, even when you release the accelerator pedal in SMART SPORT mode. It is because your vehicle remains in lower gear over a certain period of time for next acceleration. Thus, it is a normal driving situation, not indicating any malfunction.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT mode only in harsh driving situations. In most of the normal driving situations, the driving mode sets to be either in SMART ECO mode or in SMART NORMAL mode.

### Limitation of SMART mode

The SMART mode may be limited in following situations. (The OFF indicator illuminates in those situations.)

- The driver manually moves the shift lever :

  It deactivates SMART mode. The vehicle drives, as the driver manually moves the shift lever.
- The cruise control is activated :

  The cruise control system may deactivate the SMART mode when the vehicle is controlled by the set speed of the smart cruise control system. (SMART mode is not deactivated just by activating the cruise control system.)
- The transmission oil temperature is either extremely low or extremely high :

  The SMART mode can be active in most of the normal driving situations. However, an extremely high/low transmission oil temperature may temporarily deactivate the SMART mode, because the transmission condition is out of normal operation condition.

### *SPORT mode*

SPORT mode manages the driving dynamics by automatically adjusting the steering effort, and the engine and transmission control logic for enhanced driver performance.

- When SPORT mode is selected by pressing the DRIVE MODE button, the SPORT indicator (orange color) will illuminate.
- Whenever the engine is restarted, the Drive Mode will revert back to SMART mode. If SPORT mode is desired, re-select SPORT mode from the DRIVE MODE button.
- When SPORT mode is activated:
  - The engine rpm will tend to remain raised over a certain length of time even after releasing the accelerator
  - Upshifts are delayed when accelerating

#### Information

**In SPORT mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.**

**NOTICE**

**Virtual engine sounds are generated from the exterior amplifiers. Pay extreme caution while replacing amplifier components. The use of any after-market components or speakers may damage the exterior amplifiers causing the virtual engine sounds not to properly operate.**

### *ECO mode*

When the Drive Mode is set to ECO mode, the engine and transmission control logic are changed to maximize fuel efficiency.

- When ECO mode is selected by pressing the DRIVE MODE button, the ECO indicator (green color) will illuminate.
- If the vehicle is set to ECO mode, when the engine is turned OFF and restarted the Drive Mode setting will remain in ECO mode.

#### Information

**Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.**

### When ECO mode is activated:

- The acceleration response may be slightly reduced if the accelerator pedal is depressed moderately.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transmission may change.
- The engine noise may be louder at some automatic transmission shifts as down-shift requires pressing down more on the accelerator.

The above situations are normal conditions when ECO mode is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

### Limitation of ECO mode operation:

If the following conditions occur while ECO mode is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:

  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:

  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because engine torque is restricted.
- When driving the vehicle with the automatic transmission gear shift lever in manual mode.

  The system will be limited according to the shift location.

## *INDIVIDUAL mode*

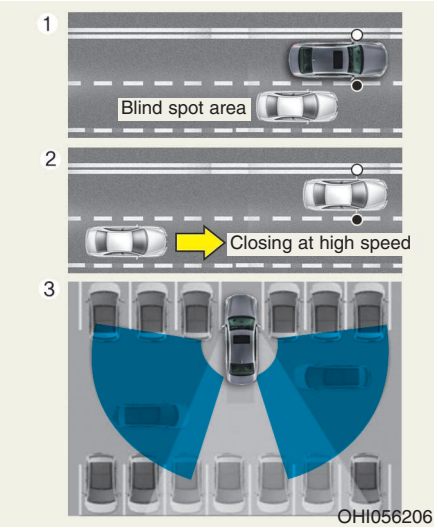
In INDIVIDUAL mode, the driver can select separate modes and combine them on the DIS Navigation System screen.

- Engine/Transmission: ECO/SMART
- Steering wheel: COMFORT/ SPORT
- Suspension: COMFORT +/ COMFORT/SPORT
- All-Wheel Drive (AWD) system: ECO/COMFORT/SPORT

**For more information, refer to the separately supplied DIS Navigation System manual.**

- When INDIVIDUAL mode is selected by pressing the DRIVE MODE button, the INDIVIDUAL mode indicator (blue color) will illuminate.

## BLIND SPOT DETECTION SYSTEM (BSD) (IF EQUIPPED)




The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) uses radar sensors in the rear bumper to monitor and warn the driver of an approaching vehicle in the driver's blind spot area.

The system monitors the rear area of the vehicle and provides information to the driver with an audible alert and a indicator on the outside rearview mirrors.

(1) BSD (Blind Spot Detection)

The blind spot detection range varies relative to vehicle speed. Note that if your vehicle is traveling much faster than the vehicles around you, the warning will not occur.

(2) LCA (Lane Change Assist)

The Lane Change Assist feature will alert you when a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a high rate of speed. If the driver activates the turn signal when the system detects an oncoming vehicle, the system sounds an audible alert.

(3) RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)

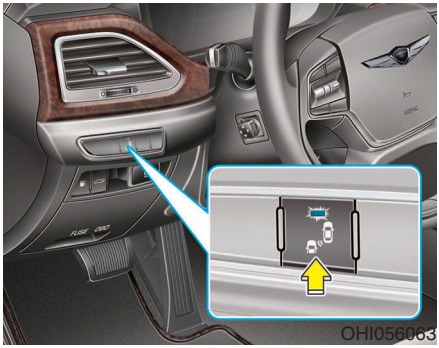
The Rear Cross Traffic Alert feature monitors approaching cross traffic from the left and right side of the vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse. The feature will operate when the vehicle is moving in reverse below about 10 km/h (6 mph). If oncoming cross traffic is detected a warning chime will sound.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always be aware of road conditions while driving and be alert for unexpected situations even though the Blind Spot Detection System is operating.**
- **The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is a supplemental system to assist you. Do not entirely rely on the system. Always pay attention, while driving, for your safety.**
- **The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is not a substitute for proper and safe driving. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing up the vehicle. The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**

## BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist)

### *Operating conditions*




To operate:

Press the BSD switch with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.

The indicator on the BSD switch will illuminate. When the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (20 mph), the system will be activated.

To cancel:

Press the BSD switch again. The indicator on the switch will go off.

### *i* Information

- **If the engine is turned off then on again, the BSD system returns to the previous state.**
- **When the system is turned on, the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.**

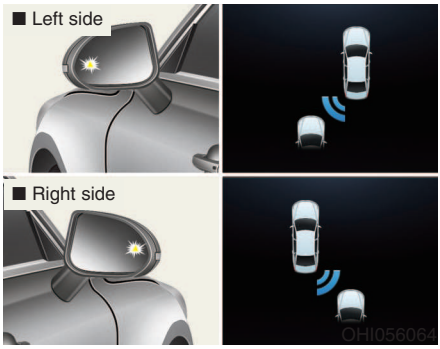
The system will activate when:

1. The system is on.
2. The vehicle speed is above about 30 km/h (20 mph).
3. An oncoming vehicle is detected in the blind spot area.

- The initial warning alert time for the Lane Change Assist can be adjusted.

  Go to the 'User Settings → Driving Assist and select Lane Change Assist' on the LCD display. You may select between the two stages you prefer.

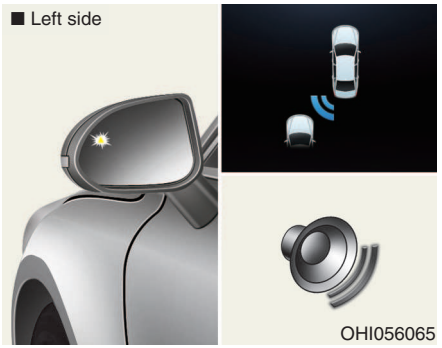
  - Normal/Late




#### First stage alert

If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the system, a warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror and the head up display (if equipped).

Once the detected vehicle is no longer within the blind spot area, the warning will turn off according to the driving conditions of the vehicle.



### Second stage alert

A warning chime to alert the driver will activate when:

1. A vehicle has been detected in the blind spot area by the radar system AND.
2. The turn signal is applied (same side as where the vehicle is being detected).

When this alert is activated, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and the head up display (if equipped) will also blink.

If you turn off the turn signal indicator, the second stage alert will be deactivated.

- The second stage alarm may be deactivated.
  - To activate the warning chime: Go to the 'User Settings → Driving Assist and select Blind Spot Detection Sound' on the LCD display.
  - To deactivate the warning chime: Go to the 'User Settings → Driving Assist and deselect Blind Spot Detection Sound' on the LCD display.

### Information

**The warning chime function helps alert the driver. Deactivate this function only when it is necessary.**

### *Detecting sensor*

The sensors are located inside the rear bumper.

Always keep the rear bumper clean for proper operation of the system.

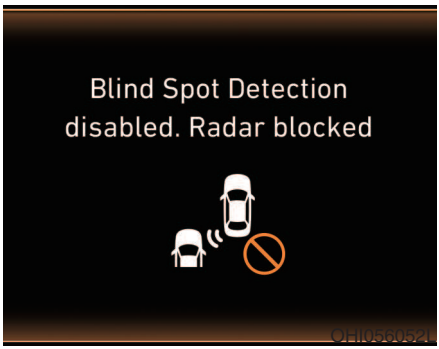
If any of these conditions occur, the light on the BSD switch and the system will turn off automatically.

When the BSD canceled warning message is displayed in the cluster, check to make sure that the rear bumper is free from any dirt or snow in the areas where the sensor is located. Remove any dirt, snow, or foreign material that could interfere with the radar sensors.

After any dirt or debris is removed, the BSD system should operate normally after about 10 minutes of driving the vehicle.

If the system still does not operate normally have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Warning message*




**Blind Spot Detection disabled. Radar blocked**

- This warning message may appear when :
  - One or both of the sensors on the rear bumper is blocked by dirt or snow or a foreign object.
  - Driving in rural areas where the BSD sensor does not detect another vehicle for an extended period of time.
  - When there is inclement weather such as heavy snow or rain.

**Check BSD system**

If there is a problem with the BSD system, a warning message will appear and the light on the switch will turn off. The system will turn off automatically. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) (if equipped)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert feature monitors approaching cross traffic from the left and right side of the vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse.

### *Operating conditions*

To operate:

Go to the 'User Settings → Driving Assist and select Rear Cross Traffic Alert' on the LCD display. The system will turn on and standby to activate. The system will activate when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6.2 mph) and with the shift lever in R (Reverse).

### Information

**The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) detecting range is approximately 0.5 m ~ 20 m (1 ft ~ 65 ft). An approaching vehicle will be detected if their vehicle speed is within 4 km/h ~ 36 km/h (2.5 ~ 22.5 mph ).**

**Note that the detecting range may vary under certain conditions. As always, use caution and pay close attention to your surroundings when backing up your vehicle.**

### *Warning type*

■ Left

■ Right

If the vehicle detected by the sensors approaches your vehicle, the warning chime will sound, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a message will appear on the LCD display.

### Information

- The warning chime will turn off when the detected vehicle moves out of the sensing area or if your vehicle is moved away from the detected vehicle.
- The system may not operate properly due to other factors or circumstances. Always pay attention to your surrounding.
- If the sensing area near the rear bumper is blocked by either a wall or barrier or by a parked vehicle, the system sensing area may be reduced.

### WARNING

- The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate whenever a vehicle is detected at the rear side by the system.

  To avoid accidents, do not focus only on the warning light and neglect to see the surrounding of the vehicle.
- Drive safely even though the vehicle is equipped with a Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Do not solely rely on the system but check your surrounding before changing lanes or backing the vehicle up.

  The system may not alert the driver in some conditions so always check your surroundings while driving.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) are not a substitute for proper and safe driving practices. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing up your vehicle. The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.

### NOTICE

- The system may not work properly when the bumper has been damaged, or if the rear bumper has been replaced or repaired.
- The sensing range differs somewhat according to the width of the road. When the road is narrow, the system may detect other vehicles in the next lane.
- The system may turn off due to strong electromagnetic waves.

### *Non-operating condition*

**The BSD indicator on the outside rearview mirror may not illuminate properly when:**

- The outside rearview mirror housing is damaged.
- The mirror is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is tinted.

## Limitations of the system

The driver must be cautious in the below situations, because the system may not detect other vehicles or objects in certain circumstances.

- The vehicle drives on a curved road or through a tollgate.
- The sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc.
- The rear bumper where the sensor is located is covered with a foreign object such as a bumper sticker, a bumper guard, a bike rack, etc.
- The rear bumper is damaged, or the sensor is out of the original default position.
- The vehicle height gets lower or higher due to heavy loading in a trunk, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- The vehicle drives in inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow.
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as a guardrail.
- A big vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is near.
- A flat trailer is near.
- If the vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.
- When the other vehicle passes at a very fast speed.
- While changing lanes.
- While going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.
- When the other vehicle approaches very close.
- When a trailer or carrier is installed.
- When the temperature of the rear bumper is high.
- When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles, walls or parking-lot pillars.
- When the detected vehicle also moves back, as your vehicle drives back.
- If there are small objects in the detecting area such as a shopping cart or a baby stroller.
- If there is a low height vehicle such as a sports car.
- When other vehicles are close to your vehicle.
- When the vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you OR when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you.

# SMART BLIND SPOT DETECTION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Smart Blind Spot Detection System detects the front area through the camera installed on the upper front windshield and detects the side/rear areas through radar sensors.

The Smart Blind Spot Detection System may activate the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) in accordance with a colliding possibility with an approaching vehicle while changing lanes. It is to lower the colliding risk or mitigate the colliding damage.

### *Operating conditions*

The system enters the ready status, when the following conditions are satisfied with the smart blind system in the ON position:

- Vehicle speed is between 60 km/h and 180 km/h.
- The system detects both of the lane lines.
- An approaching vehicle is detected next to/behind your vehicle.

### *Activation (with braking performance)*

The Smart Blind Spot Detection System may apply braking power, when an approaching vehicle is detected within a certain distance next to/behind your vehicle.

It gently applies braking power on the tire, which is located in the opposite side of the possibly-colliding point. The instrument cluster will inform the driver of the system activation.

The Smart Blind Spot Detection System is automatically deactivated, when the vehicle drives a certain distance away, when the vehicle direction is changed against the possible-colliding point, when the steering wheel is abruptly moved, or when the brake pedal is depressed.

When the turn signals operate, the Smart Blind Spot Detection System operates only once. However, when the turn signals are turned off, the system re-enters the activation conditions.

The driver should drive the vehicle in the middle of the vehicle lanes to keep the system in the ready status. When the vehicle drives too close to one side of the vehicle lanes, the system may not properly operate.

In addition, the system may not properly control your vehicle in accordance with driving situations. Thus, always pay close attention to road situations.

### *Warning message*

**Smart BSD braking system malfunction**

When there is a malfunction with the Smart Blind Spot Detection System, warning message appears on LCD display and deactivates the Smart Blind Spot Detection System. In this case, we recommend you to have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Limitations of the system

The driver must be cautious in the below situations, because the system may not detect other vehicles or objects in certain circumstances.

- The vehicle drives on a curved road or through a tollgate.
- The sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc.
- The rear bumper where the sensor is located is covered with a foreign object such as a bumper sticker, a bumper guard, a bike rack, etc.
- The rear bumper is damaged, or the sensor is out of the original default position.
- The vehicle height gets lower or higher due to heavy loading in a trunk, abnormal tire pressure, etc.
- The vehicle drives in inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow.
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as a guardrail.
- A big vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is near.
- A flat trailer is near.
- If the vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.
- When the other vehicle passes at a very fast speed.
- While changing lanes.
- While going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.
- When the other vehicle approaches very close.
- When a trailer or carrier is installed.

- When the temperature of the rear bumper is high.
- When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles, walls or parking-lot pillars.
- When the detected vehicle also moves back, as your vehicle drives back.
- If there are small objects in the detecting area such as a shopping cart or a baby stroller.
- If there is a low height vehicle such as a sports car.
- When other vehicles are close to your vehicle.
- The lanes ahead are not visible due to rain, snow, water on the road, damaged or stained road surface, or other factors.
- The brightness outside changes suddenly such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The brightness outside is too low such as when the headlamps are not on at night or the vehicle is going through a tunnel.
- It is difficult to distinguish the lane marking from the road surface or the lane marking is faded or not clearly marked.
- Driving on a steep grade, over a hill, or when driving on a curved road.
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road.
- The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare.
- The lanes are incomplete or the area is in a construction zone.
- There are more than two lane lines on the road in front of you.
- The lane markings are not clearly visible from the road.
- The lane width is too wide or too narrow.
- The windshield glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed.
- There are markings on the road surface that look like a lane line that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway such as a concrete barrier that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- There is not enough distance between you and the vehicle in front to be able to detect the lane line or the vehicle ahead is driving on the lane line.
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (i.e. possibly due to subway construction).
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is activated.
- The tire pressure is low or a tire is damaged.
- The brake is reworked.
- The vehicle is driven near a guardrail or near the boundary line of a road.
- The windshield or the camera lens is blocked with dirt or debris.
- The vehicle drives on a small-radius curve.
- The vehicle drives in the opposite direction from the designated lane direction.
- The lane sensing operation is interrupted by another vehicle in front.

- The vehicle drives under 60 km/h or over 180 km/h.
- The vehicle abruptly changes driving direction.
- The vehicle abruptly enters the next lane.
- The vehicle sharply stops.
- Temperature is extremely low around the vehicle.
- The vehicle severely vibrates while driving over a bumpy road, uneven/bumpy road, or concrete patch.
- The vehicle drives on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, or ice.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver is responsible for accurate steering.**
- **Do not unnecessarily operate the steering wheel, when the Smart Blind Spot Detection System is in operation.**
- **Always pay extreme caution while driving. The Smart Blind Spot Detection System may not operate or unnecessarily operate in accordance with your driving situations.**
- **The Smart Blind Spot Detection System is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**

# AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) (IF EQUIPPED)

The Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or detect a pedestrian (if equipped) in the roadway through radar signals and camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB):**

- **This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or while cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. AEB does not stop the vehicle completely and is not a collision avoidance system.**

## System setting and activation

### *System setting*

The driver can activate the AEB by placing the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position and by selecting 'User Settings → Driving Assist → Autonomous Emergency Braking'. The AEB deactivates, when the driver cancels the system setting.

The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel the AEB system. The driver can monitor the AEB ON/OFF status on the LCD display. If the warning light remains ON when the AEB is activated, we recommend you to have the system checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning includes the following:

- Early:

  When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximizes the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.

- Normal:

  When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.

- Late:

  When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.

### *Prerequisite for activation*

The AEB gets ready to be activated, when the AEB is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is activated.
- To enable the system to detect pedestrians ahead, the vehicle driving speed must be between 8 km/h – 70 km/h (5 mph – 45 mph).
- To enable the system to detect a vehicle ahead, the vehicle driving speed must be between 8 km/h – 180 km/h (5 mph – 110 mph).

When traveling above 80 km/h (50 mph), the AEB system only initiates partial braking. This is to prevent unintended full braking to stop in the middle of the highway.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Completely stop the vehicle on a safe location before operating the switch on the steering wheel to activate /deactivate the AEB system.**
- **The AEB automatically activates upon placing the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position. The driver can deactivate the AEB by canceling the system setting on the LCD display.**
- **The AEB automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC (Electronic Stability Control). When the ESC is canceled, the AEB cannot be activated on the LCD display.**

## AEB warning message and system control

The AEB produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels, such as abrupt stopping of the vehicle in front, insufficient braking distance, or pedestrian detection. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.

### *Forward Warning (1st warning)*

This initial warning message appears on the LCD display and the head up display (if equipped) with a warning chime.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include EARLY, NORMAL, or LATE initial warning time.

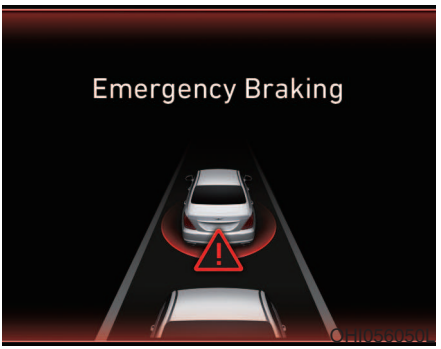
### *Collision Warning (2nd warning)*

This warning message appears on the LCD display and the head up display (if equipped) with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- If a vehicle is detected, your vehicle speed may decelerate moderately.

### *Emergency braking (3rd warning)*




This warning message appears on the LCD display and the head up display (if equipped) with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- If the detected vehicle in front is driving slower than 80 km/h (50 mph) your vehicle speed may decelerate sharply to avoid a collision. If the detected vehicle in front is driving faster than 80 km/h (50 mph), your vehicle speed may decelerate moderately.
- If your vehicle drives slower than 70 km/h (45 mph) with a pedestrian in front, the driving speed may abruptly decrease. When your vehicle drives faster than 70 km/h (45 mph) with a pedestrian in front, the AEB does not operate.

### *Brake operation*

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing the brake pedal.
- The AEB provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the accelerator, or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The AEB brake control is automatically canceled, when risk factors disappear.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The driver should always use extreme caution while operating the vehicle, whether or not there is a warning message or alarm from the AEB system.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The braking control cannot completely stop the vehicle nor avoid all collisions. The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The AEB system logic operates within certain parameters, such as the distance from the vehicle or pedestrian ahead, the speed of the vehicle ahead, and the driver's vehicle speed. Certain conditions such as inclement weather and road conditions may affect the operation of the AEB system.**

## AEB front radar sensor

In order for the AEB system to operate properly, always make sure the radar sensor cover is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris. Dirt, snow, or foreign substances on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.

### *Warning message and warning light*

**Auto Emergency Braking disabled. Radar blocked**

When the sensor cover is blocked with dirt, snow, or debris, the AEB system operation may stop temporarily. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the LCD display.

Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor cover before operating the AEB system.

The AEB may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substances are not detected after turning ON the engine.

**NOTICE**

- **Do not apply foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.**
- **Always keep the radar sensor and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the AEB system may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. Have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the AEB system may not operate properly. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Use only Genesis/Hyundai Part to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.**

## System malfunction

**Check AEB system**

- When the AEB is not working properly, the AEB warning light ( ) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. In this case, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- The AEB warning message may appear along with the illumination of the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The AEB is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on the AEB system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed.**
- **In certain instances and under certain driving conditions, the AEB system may activate prematurely. This initial warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.**

  **Also, in certain instances the front radar sensor or camera recognition system may not detect the vehicle or pedestrian ahead. The AEB system may not activate and the warning message will not be displayed.**
- **If there is a malfunction with the AEB system, the autonomous emergency braking is not applied even though the braking system is operating normally.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The AEB system operates only to detect vehicles or pedestrians in front of the vehicle.**

  **The AEB system does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse.**

  **The AEB system is not designed to detect other objects on the road such as animals.**

  **The AEB system does not detect cross traffic vehicles that are approaching.**

  **The AEB system cannot detect the driver approaching the side view of a parked vehicle (for example on a dead end street.)**

  **In these cases, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.**

## Limitations of the system

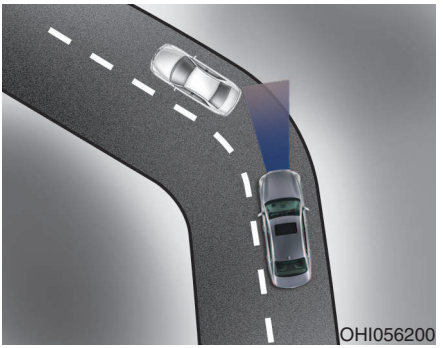
The Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system is designed to monitor the vehicle ahead or a pedestrian in the roadway through radar signals and camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

In certain situations, the radar sensor or the camera may not be able to detect the vehicle or pedestrian ahead. In these cases, the AEB system may not operate normally. The driver must pay careful attention in the following situations where the AEB operation may be limited.

### *Detecting vehicles*

The sensor may be limited when:

- The radar sensor or camera is blocked with a foreign object or debris
- Inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow obscures the field of view of the radar sensor or camera
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves
- There is severe irregular reflection from the radar sensor
- The vehicle in front is too small to be detected by the camera recognition system (for example a motorcycle or a bicycle, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is an oversize vehicle or trailer that is too big to be detected by the camera recognition system (for example a tractor trailer, etc.)
- The driver's field of view is not well illuminated (either too dark or too much reflection or too much backlight that obscures the field of view)
- The vehicle in front does not have their rear lights properly turned ON
- The outside brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The vehicle in front is driving erratically



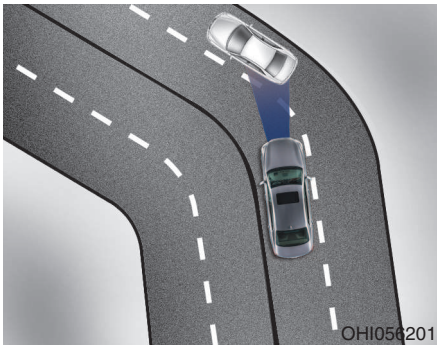

- Driving on a curve

The performance of the AEB system may be limited when driving on a curved road.

In certain instances on a curved road, the AEB system may activate prematurely.

Also, in certain instances the front radar sensor or camera recognition system may not detect the vehicle traveling on a curved road.

In these cases, the driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

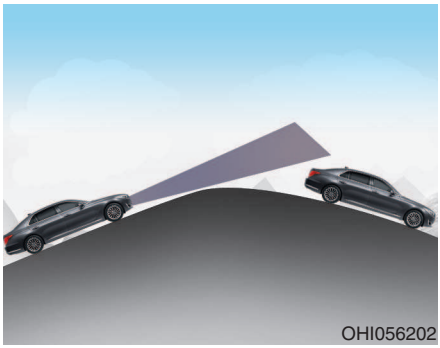



The AEB system may recognize a vehicle in the next lane when driving on a curved road.

In this case, the system may unnecessarily alarm the driver and apply the brake.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, while driving. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Also, when necessary depress the accelerator pedal to prevent the system from unnecessarily decelerating your vehicle.

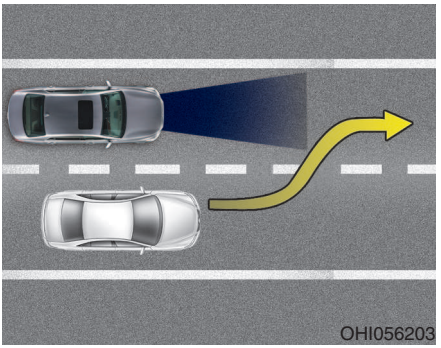



- Driving on a slope

The performance of the AEB decreases while driving upward or downward on a slope, not recognizing the vehicle in front in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

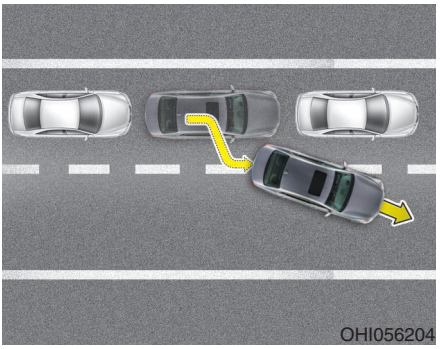
When the AEB suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front while passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

Always keep your eyes forward while driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

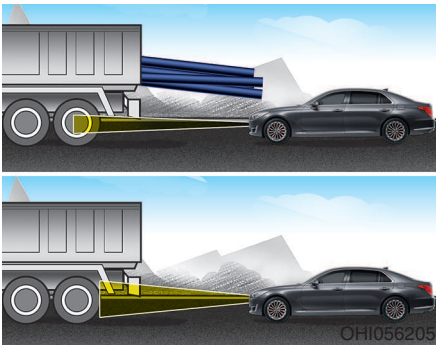



- Changing lanes

When a vehicle changes lanes in front of you, the AEB system may not immediately detect the vehicle, especially if the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.




When driving in stop-and-go traffic, and a stopped vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, the AEB system may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.




- Detecting the vehicle in front of you

If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. The AEB system may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

### *Detecting pedestrians (if equipped)*

The sensor may be limited when:

- The pedestrian is not fully detected by the camera recognition system, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian is moving very quickly or appears abruptly in the camera detection area

  The pedestrian is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to be detected by the camera recognition system
- The outside lighting is too bright (e.g. when driving in bright sunlight or in sun glare) or too dark (e.g. when driving on a dark rural road at night)
- It is difficult to detect and distinguish the pedestrian from other objects in the surroundings, for example, when there is a group of pedestrians or a large crowd

**⚠ WARNING**

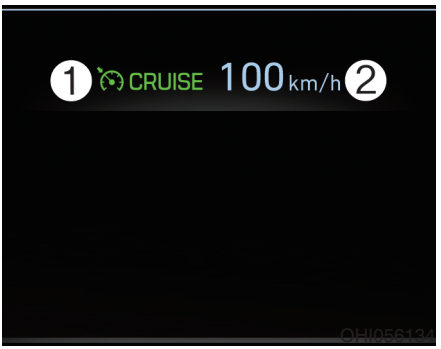
- **Do not use the Autonomous Emergency Braking system when towing a vehicle. Application of the AEB system while towing may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle or the towing vehicle**
- **Use extreme caution when the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance.**
- **The AEB system is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or detect a pedestrian in the roadway through radar signals and camera recognition. It is not designed to detect bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.**
- **Never try to test the operation of the AEB system. Doing so may cause severe injury or death.**

**i Information**

**In some instances, the AEB system may be cancelled when subjected to electromagnetic interference.**

# CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

## Cruise Control operation




1. Cruise Indicator
2. Set Speed

The Cruise Control system allows you to drive at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) without depressing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions:**

- **If the Cruise Control is left on, (Cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated) the Cruise Control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the Cruise Control system off (Cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator light OFF) when the Cruise Control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the Cruise Control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.**

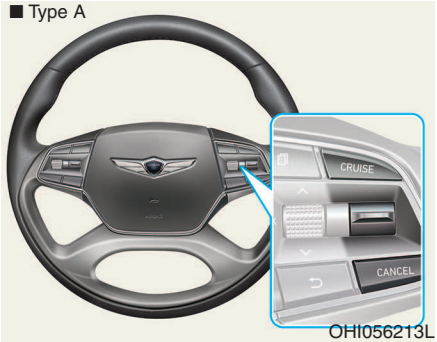
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not use the Cruise Control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:**
  - **When driving in heavy traffic or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed**
  - **When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads**
  - **When driving on hilly or windy roads**
  - **When driving in windy areas**

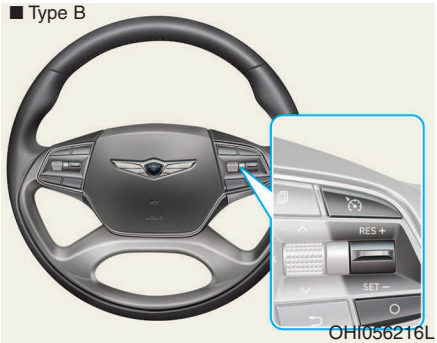
### *Cruise control switch*

■ Type A




OHI056213L

■ Type B




OHI056216L

CANCEL/O : Cancels cruise control operation.

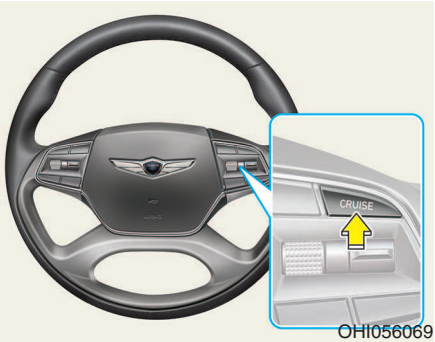
CRUISE / : Turns cruise control system on or off.

RES+ : Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET- : Sets or decreases cruise control speed.

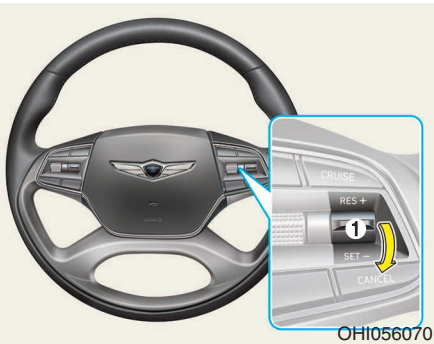
## Cruise Control speed

### *To set Cruise Control speed*




OHI056069

1. Push the CRUISE/ button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).



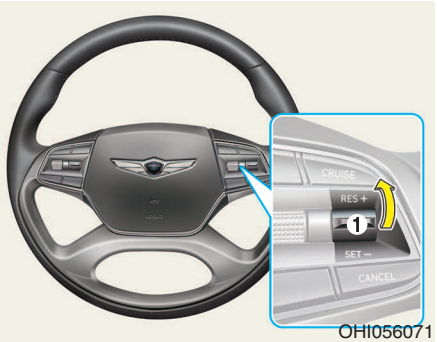

OHI056070

3. Push the toggle switch (1) down (SET-), and release it. The set speed will appear.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

### *i* Information

**The vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going uphill or downhill.**

### *To increase Cruise Control speed*



OHI056071

- Push the toggle switch (1) up (RES+) and hold it, while monitoring the SET speed on the instrument cluster. Release the toggle switch when the desired speed is shown and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed.
- Push the toggle switch (1) up (RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time the toggle switch is operated in this manner.
- Depress the accelerator pedal. When the vehicle attains the desired speed, push the toggle switch (1) down (SET-).

### *To decrease Cruise Control speed*

OHI056070

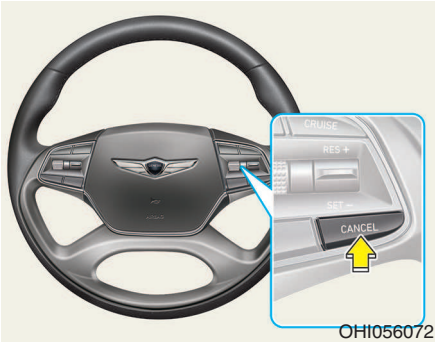
- Push the toggle switch (1) down (SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the toggle switch at the speed you want to maintain.
- Push the toggle switch (1) down (SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time the toggle switch is operated in this manner.
- Lightly tap the brake pedal. When the vehicle attains the desired speed, push the toggle switch (1) down (SET-).

### *To temporarily accelerate with the Cruise Control ON*

Depress the accelerator pedal. When you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle will return to the previously set speed.

If you push the toggle switch down (SET-) at the increased speed, the Cruise Control will maintain the increased speed.

### *Cruise Control will be canceled when:*

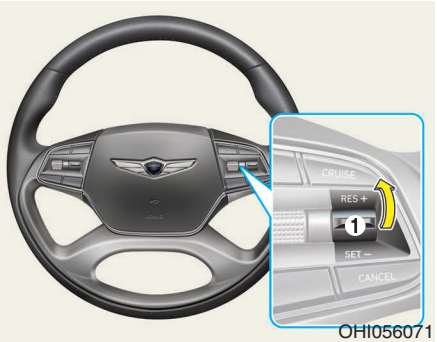



- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Pressing the CANCEL/ button located on the steering wheel.
- Pushing the CRUISE/ button. Both the cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator and the set speed will turn OFF.
- Moving the shift toggle switch into N (Neutral).
- Decreasing the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decreasing the vehicle speed to less than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph).
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is operating.
- Downshifting to the 2nd gear in manual mode with the paddle shifter.

### *i* Information

**Each of the above actions will cancel Cruise Control operation (the set speed in the instrument cluster will go off), but only pressing the CRUISE/ button will turn the system off. If you wish to resume Cruise Control operation, push the toggle switch up (RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed, unless the system was turned off using the CRUISE/ button.**

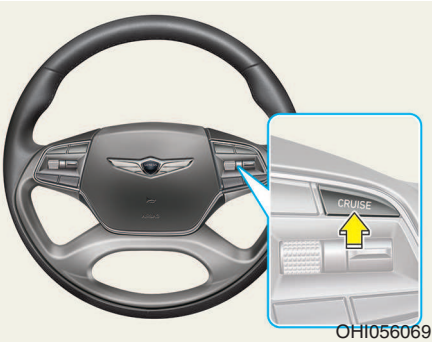
### *To resume preset cruising speed*



OHI056071

Push the toggle switch (1) up (RES+). If the vehicle speed is over 30 km/h (20 mph), the vehicle will resume the preset speed.

### *To turn Cruise Control off*

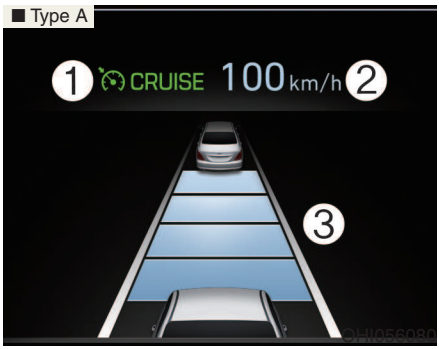


OHI056069

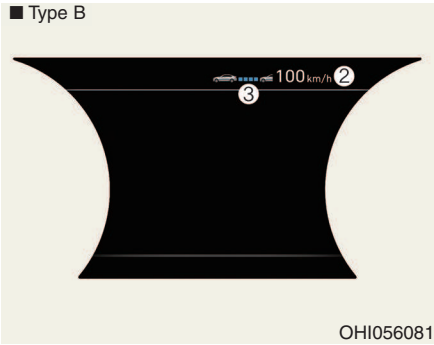
- Push the CRUISE/ button (the cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator light will go off).
- Turn the engine OFF.

# ADVANCED SMART CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A




■ Type B




OHI056081

① Cruise Indicator
② Set Speed
③ Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance

The Smart Cruise Control System allows you to program the vehicle to maintain constant speed and distance detecting the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator/brake pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the Smart Cruise Control system.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Smart Cruise Control System is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions:**

- **If the Smart Cruise Control is left on, (cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated) the Smart Cruise Control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the Smart Cruise Control System off (cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator light OFF) when the Smart Cruise Control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the Smart Cruise Control System only when traveling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the Smart Cruise Control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:**
  - **When driving in heavy traffic or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed**
  - **When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads**
  - **When driving on hilly or windy roads**

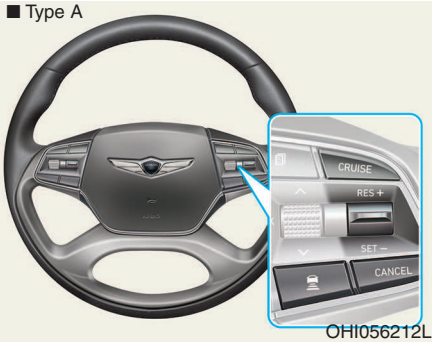
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When driving in windy areas**
- **When driving in parking lots**
- **When driving near crash barriers**
- **When driving on a sharp curve**
- **When driving with limited view (possibly due to bad weather, such as fog, snow, rain or sandstorm)**

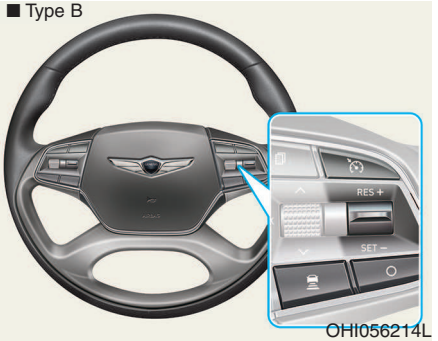
### *Smart cruise control switch*

■ Type A




OHI056212L

■ Type B




OHI056214L

CANCEL/O : Cancels cruise control operation.

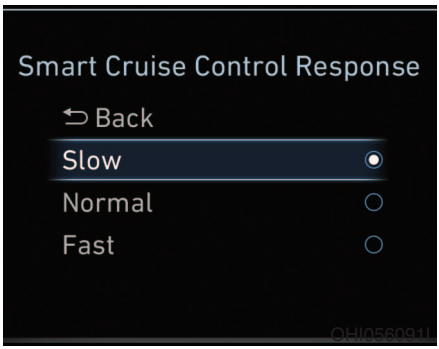
CRUISE / : Turns cruise control system on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases cruise control speed.

: Sets vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

## To Adjust the Sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control




The sensitivity of vehicle speed when following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance can be adjusted. Go to the 'User Settings → Driving Assist → Smart Cruise Control Response → Slow/Normal/Fast' on the LCD display. You may select one of the three stages you prefer.

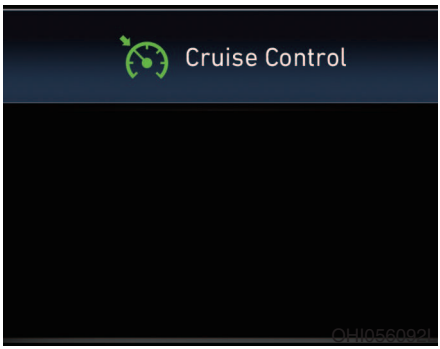
- Slow:

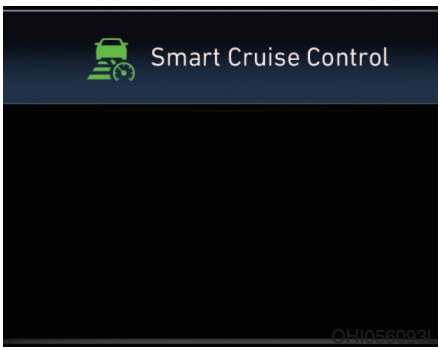
  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is slower than normal speed.
- Normal:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is normal
- Fast:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is faster than normal speed.

## To convert to Cruise Control mode




The driver may choose to only use the Cruise Control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn the Smart Cruise Control System on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the system will not be activated).
2. Push and hold the Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance button for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "Smart Cruise Control" mode and "Cruise Control" mode.

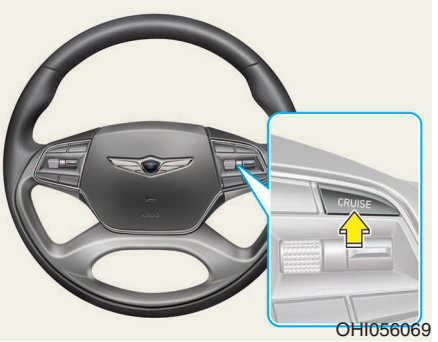
When the system is canceled using the CRUISE/ button or the CRUISE/ button is used after the engine is turned on, the SCC mode will turn on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the Cruise Control mode, you must manually adjust the distance to other vehicles by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal. The system does not automatically adjust the distance to vehicles in front of you.**

## Smart Cruise Control speed

### *To set Smart Cruise Control speed*

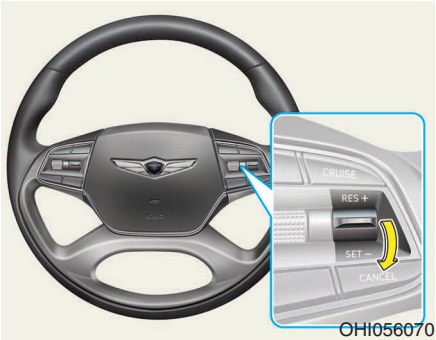


OHI056069

1. Push the CRUISE/ button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

   The Smart Cruise Control speed can be set as follows:

   - 30 km/h~200 km/h: when there is no vehicle in front
   - 0 km/h~200 km/h: when there is a vehicle in front



OHI056070

3. Push the toggle switch down (SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The Set Speed and Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance on the LCD display will illuminate.
4. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going uphill or downhill.

### Information

**Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.**

### *To increase Smart Cruise Control set speed*

OHI056071

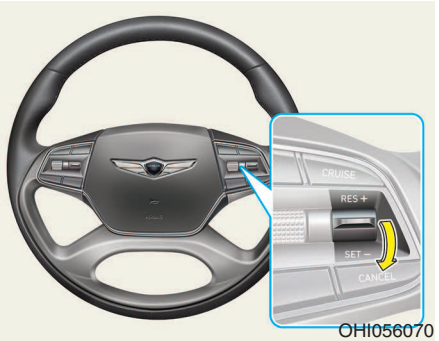
Follow either of these procedures:

- Push the toggle switch up (RES+), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h. Release the toggle switch at the speed you want.
- Push the toggle switch up (RES+), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 km/h each time you move the toggle switch up in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 200 km/h (113 mph).

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Check the driving condition before using the toggle switch. Driving speed sharply increases, when you push up and hold the toggle switch.**

### *To decrease the Smart Cruise Control set speed*



OHI056070

Follow either of these procedures:

- Push the toggle switch down (SET-), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h. Release the toggle switch at the speed you want.
- Push the toggle switch down (SET-), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 km/h each time you move the toggle switch down in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 30 km/h (20 mph).

### *To temporarily accelerate with the Smart Cruise Control on*

If you want to speed up temporarily when the Smart Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with Smart Cruise Control operation or change the set speed.

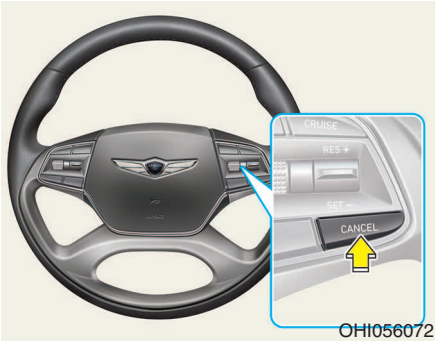
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you push the toggle switch down (SET-) at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again pedal.

### Information

**Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not controlled automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.**

### *Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily canceled when:*




**Cancelled manually**

- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Pressing the CANCEL/ button located on the steering wheel.
- Depress the brake pedal and press the CANCEL/ button at the same time, when the vehicle is at a standstill.

The Advanced Smart Cruise Control turns off temporarily when the Set Speed and Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance indicator on the LCD display turns off.

The cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator is illuminated continuously.

**Cancelled automatically**

- The driver's door is opened.
- The shift lever is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
- The EPB (Electonric Parking Brake) is applied.
- The vehicle speed is over 210 km/h (130 mph)
- The vehicle stops on a steep incline.
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control), TCS (Traction Control System) or ABS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matter.
- When the vehicle is stopped for more than 5 minutes.
- The vehicle stops and goes repeatedly for a long period of time.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the toggle switch up (RES +)/down (SET -) or depressing the accelerator pedal, approximately 3 minutes after the vehicle is stopped by the Smart Cruise Control System with no other vehicle ahead.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the toggle switch up (RES +)/down (SET -) or depressing the accelerator pedal, after stopping the vehicle with a vehicle stopped far away in front.
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for more than one minute.

Each of these actions will cancel the Smart Cruise Control operation. The Set Speed and Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance on the LCD display will go off.

In a condition the Smart Cruise Control is cancelled automatically, the Smart Cruise Control will not resume even though the RES+ or SET- toggle switch is pushed. Also, the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will be applied when the vehicle is stopped.

## Information

**If the Smart Cruise Control is cancelled by other than the reasons mentioned, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

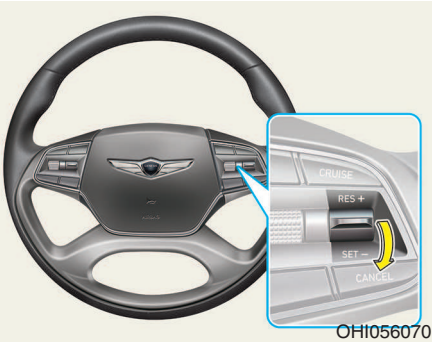
### Smart Cruise Control canceled

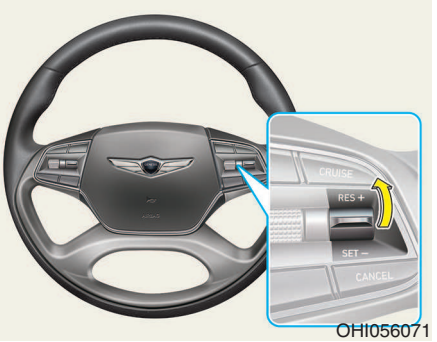
If the system is cancelled, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear for a few seconds.

You must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Always check the road conditions. Do not rely on the warning chime.

### *To resume Smart Cruise Control set speed*



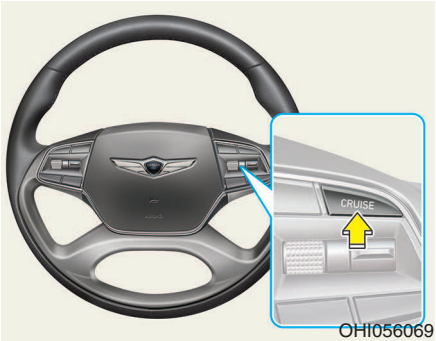

If any method other than the cruise toggle switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the cruising speed will automatically resume when you push the toggle switch up (RES+) or down (SET-).

If you push the toggle switch up (RES+), the speed will resume to the recently set speed. However, if vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph), it will resume when there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle.

## Information

**Always check the road conditions when you push the toggle switch up (RES+) to resume speed.**

### *To turn Cruise Control off*



OHI056069

Push the CRUISE/ button (the cruise ( CRUISE ) indicator light will go off).

## Smart Cruise Control Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance

### *To set Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance*

OHI056073

When the Smart Cruise Control System is ON, you can set and maintain the distance from the vehicle ahead of you without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle to vehicle distance changes as follows:

Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2 → Distance 1 → Distance 4

For example, if you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance maintain as follows:

Distance 4 - approximately 52.5 m
Distance 3 - approximately 40 m
Distance 2 - approximately 32.5 m
Distance 1 - approximately 25 m

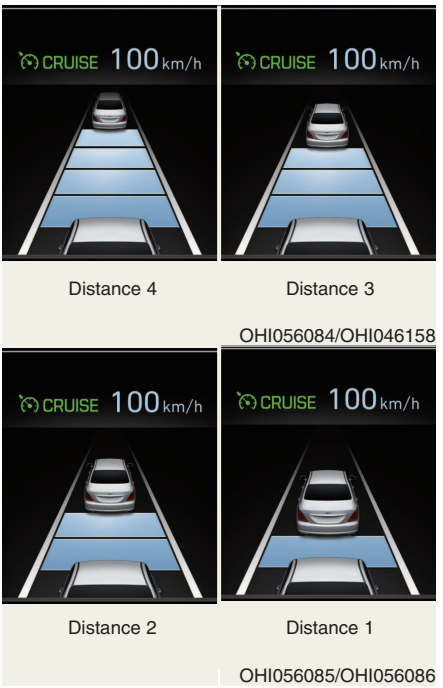
### Information

**The distance is set to the last set distance when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.**

***When the lane ahead is clear:***

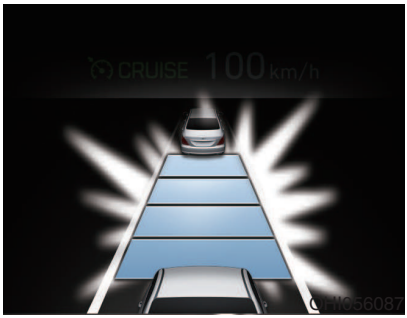
The vehicle speed will maintain the set speed.

***When there is a vehicle ahead of you in your lane:***




- Your vehicle speed will slow down or speed up to maintain the selected distance.
- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

**⚠ WARNING**




**When using the Smart Cruise Control System:**

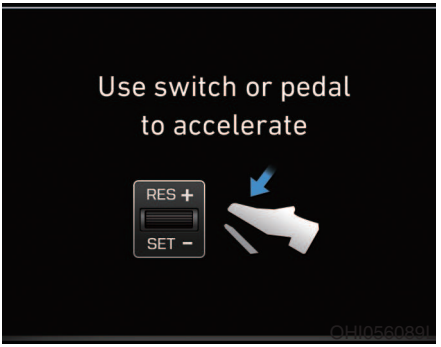
- **The warning chime sounds and the Vehicle-to Vehicle Distance indicator blinks if the vehicle is unable to maintain the selected distance from the vehicle ahead.**
- **If the warning chime sounds, depress the accelerator or brake pedal to actively adjust the vehicle speed, and the distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 30km/h) disappears to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message "Watch for surrounding vehicles" will appear. Adjust your vehicle speed for vehicles or objects that can suddenly appear in front of you by depressing the brake pedal.**

**Always pay attention to the road condition ahead.**

### *In traffic situation*




- In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. However, if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds, you must depress the accelerator pedal or push up the toggle switch (RES+) to start driving.
- If you push the advanced smart cruise control toggle switch (RES+ or SET-) while Auto Hold and advanced smart cruise control is operating the Auto Hold will be released regardless of accelerator pedal operation and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

## Sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead

The Smart Cruise Control uses a sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead.

### *Warning message*

**Smart Cruise Control disabled. Radar blocked**

When the sensor lens cover is blocked with dirt, snow, or debris, the Smart Cruise Control System operation may stop temporarily. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the LCD display. Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor lens cover before operating the Smart Cruise Control System.

The Smart Cruise Control system may not properly activate, if the radar is totally contaminated, or if any substance is not detected after turning ON the engine (e.g. in an open terrain).

### Check Smart Cruise Control System

The message will appear when the vehicle to vehicle distance control system is not functioning normally.

We recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system checked.

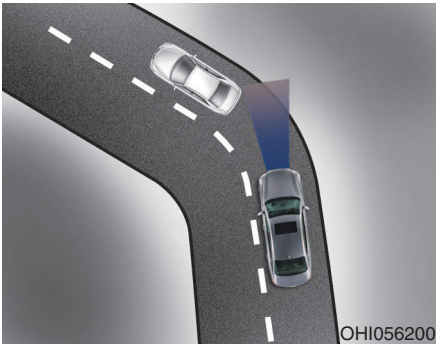
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not apply foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.**
- **Always keep the radar sensor and lens cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the Smart Cruise Control System may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. Have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the Smart Cruise Control System may not operate properly. We recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Use only Genesis/Hyundai Part to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.**

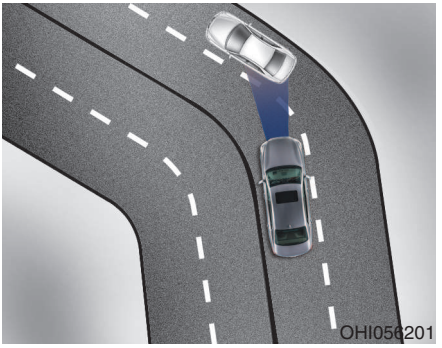
## Limitations of the system

The Smart Cruise Control System may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead due to road and traffic conditions.

### *On curves*



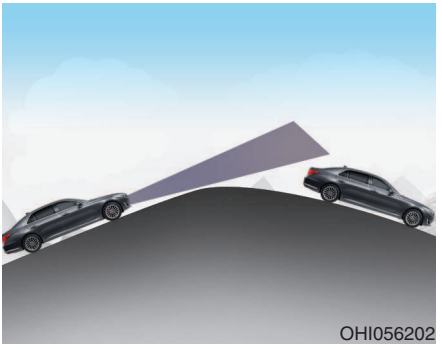

- The Smart Cruise Control System may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will decrease when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brakes or accelerator pedal if necessary.




Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

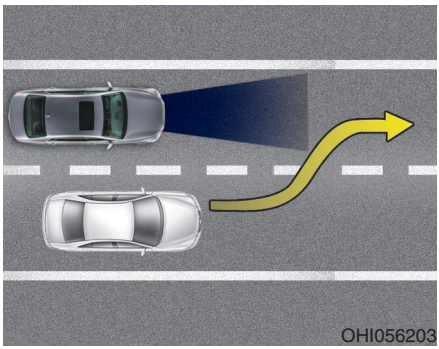
Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Cruise Control.

### *On inclines*



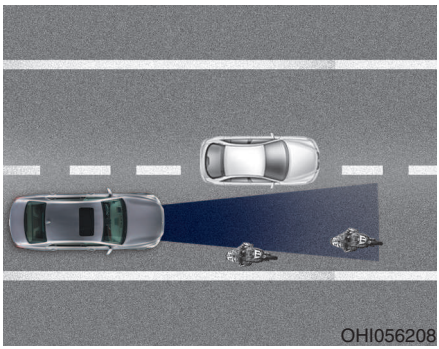

- During uphill or downhill driving, the Smart Cruise Control System may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.

### *Lane changing*




- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The radar may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a slower vehicle moves into your lane, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a faster vehicle which moves into your lane, your vehicle will accelerate to the set speed.

### *Vehicle recognition*



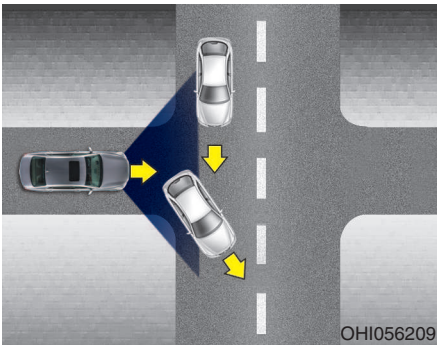

Some vehicles in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

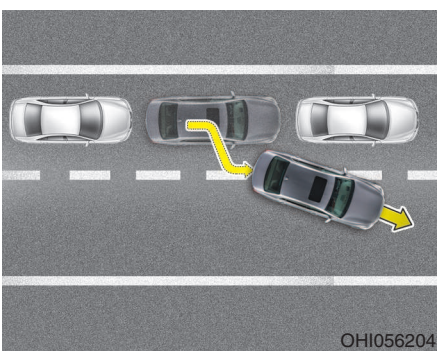
A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the trunk
- While the steering wheel is operating
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves

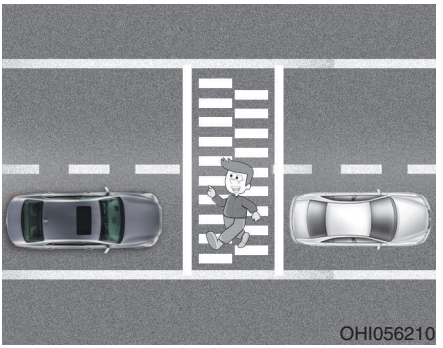
Apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.



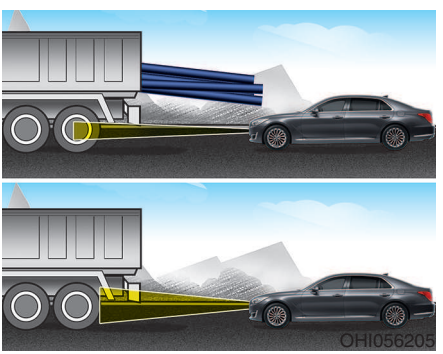

- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.




- When vehicles are at a standstill and the vehicle in front of you changes to the next lane, be careful when your vehicle starts to move because it may not recognize the stopped vehicle in front of you.




- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.




- Always be cautious for vehicles with higher height or vehicles carrying loads that sticks out from the back of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the Smart Cruise Control take the following precautions:**

- **If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes. The vehicle cannot be stopped at every emergency situation by using the Smart Cruise Control System.**
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle to vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**
- **The Smart Cruise Control System cannot recognize a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle to vehicle distance.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

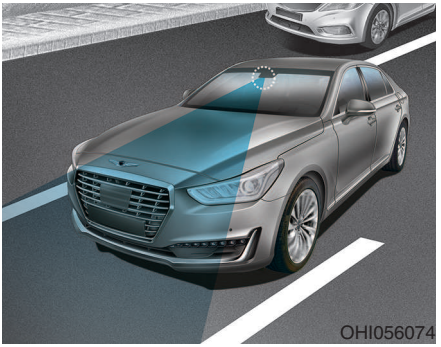
- **The Smart Cruise Control System may not recognize complex driving situations so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**

***NOTICE***

**The Smart Cruise Control System may not operate temporarily due to:**

- **Electrical interference**
- **Modifying the suspension**
- **Differences of tire abrasion or tire pressure**
- **Installing different type of tires**

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM (LDWS) (IF EQUIPPED)




This Lane Departure Warning System detects the lane with the sensor at the front windshield and warns you when your vehicle leaves the lane.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS):**

- **ALWAYS check your surroundings and the road conditions before changing lanes. The LDWS does not control the vehicle to change lanes or to stay in the current lane.**
- **Do not make abrupt maneuvers or turn the steering wheel suddenly if the LDWS alerts you that the vehicle is departing from the lane.**
- **If the camera recognition system does not properly detect the lane, the LDWS may not notify you if the vehicle departs from the lane.**
- **The LDWS does not operate until the vehicle speed reaches approximately 60 km/h (38 mph).**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The LDWS camera recognition system is located in front of the rear view mirror at the center of the front windshield. Do not spray water or any type of liquid near the camera. The system may become damaged.**
- **Do not attempt to repair the LDWS camera and do not remove any parts.**
- **Do not place objects that reflect light on the dashboard while driving.**
- **The operation of the LDWS may be affected by several factors including environmental conditions that affect the ability of the camera to detect the lanes in front of you. It is the responsibility of the driver to pay careful attention to the roadway and to maintain the vehicle in its intended lane at all times.**

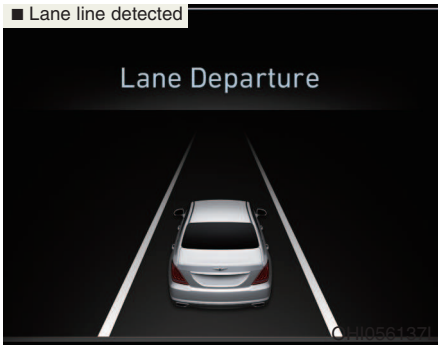
## LDWS operation

To activate the LDWS:

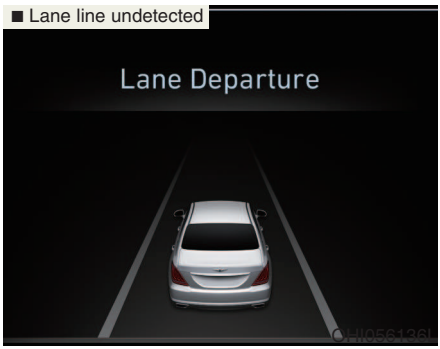
With the ignition switch in the ON position, press the LDWS button located on the instrument panel on the lower left hand side of the driver. The indicator in the cluster display will initially illuminate white. This indicates the LDWS is in the READY but NOT ENABLED state.

Note that the vehicle speed must be at least approximately 60 km/h (38 mph) to ENABLE the LDWS. The indicator in the cluster display will illuminate green.

■ Lane line detected




■ Lane line undetected




If your vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (38 mph) and the LDWS button is ON, the system is enabled. If your vehicle departs from the projected lane in front of you, the LDWS operates as follows:

■ Left

■ Right

A visual warning appears on the cluster LCD display. Either the left lane line or the right lane line in the cluster LCD display will blink depending on which direction the vehicle is veering. If you leave the lane, the steering wheel will vibrate.

## Warning light and message

### *Check LDWS*

If there is a problem with the system a message will appear for a few seconds.

If the problem continues the LDWS failure indicator will illuminate.

### *LDWS failure indicator*

The LDWS failure indicator (yellow) will illuminate if the LDWS is not working properly. We recommend you to have your vehicle checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**When there is a problem with the system, do one of the following:**

- Turn the system on after turning the engine off and on again.
- Check if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Check if the system is affected by the weather. (e.g. fog, heavy rain, etc.)
- Check if there is foreign matter on the camera lens.

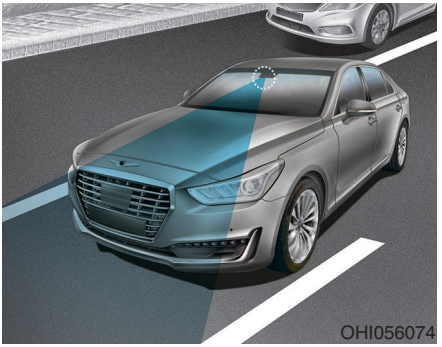
If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Limitations of the System

The LDWS may operate prematurely even if the vehicle does not depart from the intended lane, OR, the LDWS may not warn you if the vehicle leaves the intended lane under the following circumstances:

- The lanes ahead are not visible due to rain, snow, water on the road, damaged or stained road surface, or other factors.
- The brightness outside changes suddenly such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The brightness outside is too low such as when the headlamps are not on at night or the vehicle is going through a tunnel.
- The surrounding of the inside rear view mirror temperature is high due to direct sunlight.
- It is difficult to distinguish the lane marking from the road surface or the lane marking is faded or not clearly marked.
- Driving on a steep grade, over a hill, or when driving on a curved road.
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road.
- The windshield or the LDWS camera lens is blocked with dirt or debris.
- The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare.
- The lanes are incomplete or the area is in a construction zone.
- There are more than two lane lines on the road in front of you.
- The lane line is merged or divided. (e.g. tollgate)
- The lane number increases or decreases or the lane marker are crossing complicatedly.
- The lane markings are not clearly visible from the road.
- The lane width is too wide or too narrow.
- The shadow is on the lane marker by a median strip.
- The windshield glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed.
- There are markings on the road surface that look like a lane line that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway such as a concrete barrier that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- There is not enough distance between you and the vehicle in front to be able to detect the lane line or the vehicle ahead is driving on the lane line.
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST SYSTEM (LKAS) (IF EQUIPPED)




The Lane Keeping Assist System detects lane markers on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help keep the vehicle between lanes.

When the system detects the vehicle straying from its lane, it alerts the driver with a visual and steering wheel vibration warning, while applying a slight counter-steering torque, trying to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Lane Keeping Assist System is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always be aware of the surrounding and steer the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS):**

- **The steering wheel is not continuously controlled so if the vehicle speed is at a higher rate when leaving a lane the vehicle may not be controlled by the system.**
- **Do not steer the steering wheel suddenly when the steering wheel is being assisted by the system.**
- **LKAS prevents the driver from moving out of the lane unintentionally by assisting the driver's steering. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always pay attention on the steering wheel to stay in the lane.**
- **Always check the road condition and surroundings and be cautious when the system cancels, does not operate or malfunctions.**
- **The system detects lane lines and controls the steering wheel by a camera, therefore, if the lane lines are hard to detect, the system may not work properly.**

  **Please refer to "Limitations of the system".**
- **Do not attempt to repair the LKAS camera and do not remove any parts.**
- **Do not place objects that reflect light on the dashboard while driving.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not place any accessories near the rearview mirror.**
- **The operation of the LKAS may be affected by several factors including environmental conditions that affect the ability of the camera to detect the lanes in front of you. It is the responsibility of the driver to pay careful attention to the roadway and to maintain the vehicle in its intended lane at all times.**
- **Always have your hands on the steering wheel while the LKAS system is activated. If you continue to drive with your hands off the steering wheel after the "Keep hands on steering wheel" warning message appears, the system will will stop controlling the steering wheel.**
- **Always be cautious when using the system.**

## LKAS operation

To activate the LKAS:

With the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position, press the LKAS button located on the instrument panel on the lower left hand side of the driver. The indicator in the cluster display will initially illuminate white. This indicates the LKAS is in the READY but NOT ENABLED state.

### *LKAS activation*

- The LKAS screen will appear on the SCC/LKAS screen of the LCD display if the system is activated.
- When both lane lines are detected and all the conditions to activate the LKAS are satisfied, a green steering wheel indicator will illuminate and the LKAS indicator light will change from white to green. This indicates that the LKAS system is in the ENABLED state and the steering wheel will be able to be controlled.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Lane Keeping Assist System is a system to prevent the driver from leaving the lane. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always check the road conditions when driving.**

■ Line undetected

■ Line detected

- If the system detects a lane line, the color changes from gray to white.
- If the system detects the left lane line, the left lane line color will change from gray to white.
- If the system detects the right lane line, the right lane line color will change from gray to white.
- Both lane lines must be detected for the system to fully activate.

■ Left lane line

■ Left lane line

■ Right lane line

■ Right lane line

- If you cross a lane line, the lane line you cross will blink (yellow) on the LCD display with a steering wheel vibration.
- If the steering wheel appears, the system will control the vehicle's steering to prevent the vehicle from crossing the lane line.

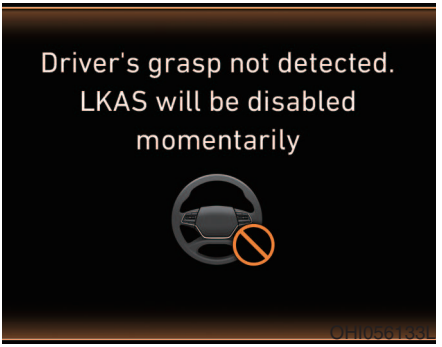
If all the conditions to activate LKAS is not satisfied, the system will convert to LDWS (Lane Departure Warning System) and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane lines.

### Keep hands on steering wheel

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds while the LKAS is activated, the system will warn the driver with a visual and audible warning.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The warning message may appear late according to road conditions. Therefore, always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**




### Driver's grasp not detected. LKAS will be disabled momentarily

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after several seconds, the system will not control the steering wheel and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane lines.

However, if the driver has their hands on the steering wheel again, the system will start controlling the steering wheel.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver is responsible for accurate steering.**
- **Turn off the system and drive the vehicle in below situations.**
  - **In bad weather**
  - **In bad road condition**
  - **When the steering wheel needs to be controlled by the driver frequently.**

### Information

- **Even though the steering is assisted by the system, the driver can still steer to control the steering wheel.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier when the steering wheel is assisted by the system than when it is not.**

**The LKAS system will not be in the ENABLED state and the steering wheel will not be assisted when:**

- Vehicle speed is below 60 km/h (37 mph) and over 180 km/h (112 mph).
- Only one lane line is detected.
- The turn signal is turned on before changing a lane. If you change lanes without the turn signal on, the steering wheel might be controlled.
- The hazard warning flasher is on.
- The width of the lane is below 2.6m (8.5 feet) and over 4.5m (15 feet).
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.
- The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve.
- The vehicle brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle makes sharp lane changes.
- There are more than two lane lines on the road. (e.g. construction area)
- The vehicle is driven on a steep incline.

### Information

**When the system is turned on or right after changing a lane, drive in the middle of the lane. If not, the system will not provide steering assist function.**

## Warning light and message

### *Check LKAS*

If there is a problem with the system a message will appear for a few seconds. If the problem continues the LKAS failure indicator will illuminate.

### *LKAS failure indicator*

The LKAS failure indicator (yellow) will illuminate if the LKAS is not working properly. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**When there is a problem with the system do one of the following:**

- Turn the system on after turning the engine off and on again.
- Check if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Check if the system is affected by the weather. (ex: fog, heavy rain, etc.)
- Check if there is foreign matter on the camera lens.

If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## LKAS function change

OHI056118L

The driver can change LKAS to Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) or change the LKAS mode between Standard LKA and Active LKA from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. The system is automatically set to Standard LKA if a function is not selected.

### *Lane Departure*

LDWS alerts the driver with a visual warning and steering wheel vibration warning when the system detects the vehicle departing the lane. The steering wheel will not be controlled.

### *Standard LKA*

The Standard LKA mode guides the driver to keep the vehicle within the lanes. It rarely controls the steering wheel, when the vehicle drives well inside the lanes. However, it starts to control the steering wheel, when the vehicle is about to deviate out of the lanes.

### *Active LKA*

The Active LKA mode provides more frequent steering wheel control in comparison with the Standard LKA mode. The driver may not feel the onset of the steering wheel control, because the Active LKA may be constantly controlling the steering with lighter corrections.

## Limitations of the System

The LKAS may operate prematurely even if the vehicle does not depart from the intended lane, OR, the LKAS may not warn you if the vehicle leaves the intended lane under the following circumstances:

- The lanes ahead are not visible due to rain, snow, water on the road, damaged or stained road surface, or other factors.
- The brightness outside changes suddenly such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The brightness outside is too low such as when the headlamps are not on at night or the vehicle is going through a tunnel.
- The surrounding of the inside rear view mirror temperature is high due to direct sunlight.
- It is difficult to distinguish the lane marking from the road surface or the lane marking is faded or not clearly marked.
- Driving on a steep grade, over a hill, or when driving on a curved road.
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road.
- The windshield or the LKAS camera lens is blocked with dirt or debris.
- The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare.
- The lanes are incomplete or the area is in a construction zone.
- There are more than two lane lines on the road in front of you.
- The lane line is merged or divided. (e.g. tollgate)
- The lane number increases or decreases or the lane marker are crossing complicatedly.
- The lane markings are not clearly visible from the road.
- The shadow is on the lane marker by a median strip.
- The lane width is too wide or too narrow. See previous page.
- The windshield glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed.
- There are markings on the road surface that look like a lane line that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway such as a concrete barrier that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- There is not enough distance between you and the vehicle in front to be able to detect the lane line or the vehicle ahead is driving on the lane line.
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving.

# DRIVER ATTENTION ALERT SYSTEM (DAA, IF EQUIPPED)

The Driver Attention Alert (DAA), system is to warn the driver with any hazardous driving situations upon detecting the driver's fatigue level or inattentive driving practices.

## System setting and activation

### *System setting*

- The Driver Attention Alert system is set to be in the OFF position, when your vehicle is first delivered to you from the factory.
- To turn ON the Driver Attention Alert system, turn on the engine, and then select 'User Settings → Driving Assist → Driver Attention Alert → Normal/Early' on the LCD display.
- The driver can select the Driver Attention Alert system mode.
  - Off : The Driver Attention Alert system is deactivated.
  - Normal : The Driver Attention Alert system alerts the driver of his/her fatigue level or inattentive driving practices.
  - Early : The Driver Attention Alert system alerts the driver of his/her fatigue level or inattentive driving practices faster than Normal mode.
- The set-up of the Driver Attention Alert system will be maintained, as selected, when the engine is re-started.

### *Prerequisite for activation*

The Driver Attention Alert system is operable, when driving speed is between 60 km/h and 180 km/h.

### *Display of the driver's attention level*

■ System off

■ Attentive driving

■ Inattentive driving

- The driver can monitor their driving conditions on the LCD display.
  - Select 'User Settings Mode' and then 'Driving Assist' on the LCD display. **(For more information, refer to "LCD Display" in chapter 3.)**
- The driver's attention level is displayed on the scale of 1 to 5. The lower the number is, the more inattentive the driver is.
- The number decreases when the driver does not take a break for a certain period of time.
- The number increases when the driver attentively drives for a certain period of time.

### *Take a break*

- The "Consider taking a break" message appears on the LCD display and a warning sounds in order to suggest the driver to take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.
- The Driver Attention Alert system suggests the driver to take a break only once while driving.
- The Driver Attention Alert system does not suggest the driver to take a break, when the total driving time is shorter than 1 hour.

## Resetting the system

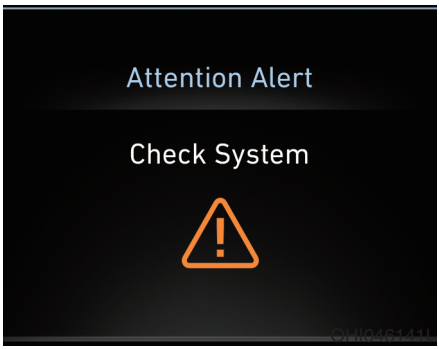
- The last break time is set to 00:00 and the driver's attention level is set to 5 (very attentive) when the driver resets the Driver Attention Alert system.
- The Driver Attention Alert system resets the last break time to 00:00 and the driver's attention level to 5 in the following situations.
  - The engine is turned OFF.
  - The driver unfastens the seat belt and then opens the driver's door.
  - The engine has been idled continuously over 10 minutes.
- The Driver Attention Alert system operates again, when the driver restarts driving.

## System standby

The Driver Attention Alert system enters the ready status and displays the 'Standby' screen in the following situations.

- The camera sensor keeps failing to detect the lanes.
- Driving speed remains under 60 km/h or over 180 km/h.

## System malfunction




When the "Check System" warning message appears, the system is not working properly. In this case, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Driver Attention Alert system is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **The driver, who feels fatigued, should take a break, even though there is no break suggestion by the Driver Attention Alert system.**

**NOTICE**

**The Driver Attention Alert system utilizes the camera sensor on the front windshield for its operation. To keep the camera sensor in the best condition, you should observe the followings:**

- **NEVER install any accessories or stickers on the front windshield, nor tint the front windshield.**
- **NEVER locate any reflective objects (i.e. white paper, mirror) over the dashboard. Any light reflection may cause a malfunction of the Driver Attention Alert (DAA) system.**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the camera sensor out of water.**
- **NEVER arbitrarily disassemble the camera assembly, nor apply any impact on the camera assembly.**
- **Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may offset the Driver Attention Alert system warning sounds.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The Driver Attention Alert system may not properly operate with limited alerting in the following situations:**

- **The lane detection performance is limited. (For more information, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)" in this chapter.)**
- **The vehicle is violently driven or is abruptly turned for obstacle avoidance (e.g. construction area, other vehicles, fallen objects, bumpy road).**
- **Forward drivability of the vehicle is severely undermined (possibly due to wide variation in tire pressures, uneven tire wear-out, toe-in/toe-out alignment).**
- **The vehicle drives on a curvy road.**
- **The vehicle drives on a bumpy road.**
- **The vehicle drives through a windy area.**
- **The vehicle is controlled by the following driving assist systems:**
  - **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)**
  - **Smart Blind Spot Detection System**
  - **Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) System**

# SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

## Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud or sand:

Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.

Avoid sudden movements in braking or steering.

If stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Downshifting with an automatic transmission while driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.**

Use sand, rock salt, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stuck in ice, snow, or mud.

## Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the engine.

To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the tires spin at high speed the tires can explode, and you or others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle.**

**The vehicle can overheat causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid spinning the wheels at speeds over 56 km/h (35 mph) as indicated on the speedometer.**

**NOTICE**

**If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating, possible damage to the transmission, and tire damage. See "Towing" in chapter 6.**

**To prevent damage to the transmission, turn OFF the ESC prior to rocking the vehicle.**

## Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration.

## Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Cruise Control. (if equipped)
- Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- Be sure your tires have enough tread. If your tires do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. See "Tire Tread" in chapter 7.
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

### *Hydroplaning*

If the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet. The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tire tread decreases, refer to "Tire Tread" in chapter 7.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Highway driving

### *Tires*

Adjust the tire inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tires.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tires, which may reduce traction or fail the braking operation.

**i Information**

**Never over-inflate your tires above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tires.**

### *Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil*

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more fuel and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve fuel when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the engine coolant level and the engine oil before driving.

### *Drive belt*

A loose or damaged drive belt may overheat the engine.

# WINTER DRIVING

## Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires.

Always carry emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

### *Snow tires*

We recommend you use snow tires when road temperature is below 7°C (45°F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tire for your vehicle.

| Standard tire | | | | Recommended snow tire | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Front | | Rear | | Front | | Rear | |
| Tire size | Wheel size | Tire size | Wheel size | Tire size | Wheel size | Tire size | Wheel size |
| 245/50R18 | 8.0Jx19 | 245/50R18 | 8.0Jx19 | 245/50R18 | 8.0Jx19 | 245/50R18 | 8.0Jx19 |
| | | | | 245/45R19 | 8.5Jx19 | 275/40R19 | 9.5Jx19 |
| 245/45R19 | 8.5Jx19 | 275/40R19 | 9.5Jx19 | 245/45R19 | 8.5Jx19 | 275/40R19 | 9.5Jx19 |

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure to use the same inflation pressure as the original tires. However, if you mount 245/45R19 size tire on the rear, the tire inflation pressure should maintain 35psi. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tires on dry road may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

### Information

**Do not install studded tires without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.**

### *Tire chains*

OHI056076

Since the sidewalls on some radial tires are thinner than other types of tires, they may be damaged by mounting certain types of tire chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of tire chains. Do not mount tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; if unavoidable, use AutoSock (fabric snow chain). Install the tire chain after reviewing the instructions provided with the tire chains. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper tire chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

### WARNING

**The use of AutoSock (fabric snow chain) may adversely affect vehicle handling:**

- **Drive less than 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.**

### Information

- **Install AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the rear tires. It should be noted that installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the tires will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.**
- **Do not install studded tires without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.**

### Chain Installation

When installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain), follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h (20 mph)) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting AutoSock (fabric snow chain), park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available).

Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing tire chains.

**NOTICE**

**When using AutoSock (fabric snow chain):**

- **Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.**
- **If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.**
- **To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km (0.3~0.6 miles).**

## Winter precaution

### *Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant*

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### *Check battery and cables*

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. We recommend that the level of charge in your battery be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary*

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *Check spark plugs and ignition system*

Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

### *To keep locks from freezing*

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### *Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system*

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### *Don't let your parking brake freeze*

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

### *Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath*

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

### *Carry emergency equipment*

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

### *Don't place foreign objects or materials in the engine compartment*

Placement of foreign objects or materials which prevent cooling of the engine, in the engine compartment, may cause a failure or combustion.

The manufacturer is not responsible for the damage caused by such placement.

## VEHICLE WEIGHT

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tire and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight**

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight**

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

**Cargo Weight**

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)**

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)**

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)**

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)**

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

### Overloading

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.**

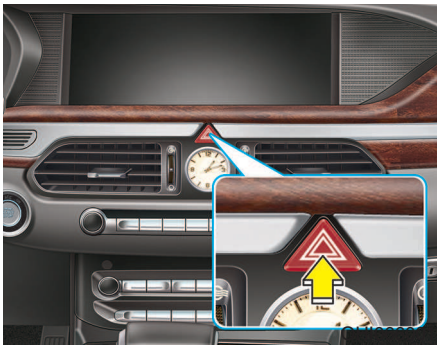
## TRAILER TOWING

**We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.**

# What to do in an emergency


Hazard warning flasher .....6-2
In case of an emergency while driving .....6-3
If the engine stalls while driving.....6-3
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing.....6-3
If you have a flat tire while driving .....6-3
If the engine will not start.....6-4
If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly .....6-4
If the engine turns over normally but doesn't start.....6-4
Jump starting .....6-5
Push-starting .....6-7
If the engine overheats .....6-8
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....6-10
Check tire pressure .....6-10
Tire pressure monitoring system.....6-11
Low tire pressure telltale.....6-12
Low tire pressure position telltale and tire pressure telltale.....6-12
TPMS (Tire pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator ..6-13
Changing a tire with TPMS .....6-14
If you have a flat tire.....6-16
Jack and tools.....6-16
Changing tires.....6-17
Jack label .....6-22
EC declaration of conformity for jack.....6-23
Towing.....6-24
Towing service.....6-24
Removable towing hook.....6-26
Emergency towing.....6-26
Emergency commodity .....6-28
Fire extinguisher .....6-28
First aid kit .....6-28
Triangle reflector.....6-28
Tire pressure gauge.....6-29

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Engine Start/Stop button in any position. The button is located in the center fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

# IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

## If the engine stalls while driving

- Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, if safe to do so, move the shift lever to the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

## If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, move the shift lever into P (Park), apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When changing a flat tire, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.

# IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

## If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

- Be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) if it is an automatic transmission vehicle. The engine starts only when the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park).
- Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is drained.

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could cause damage to your vehicle. See instructions for "Jump Starting" provided in this chapter.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Push or pull starting the vehicle may cause the catalytic converter to overload which can lead to damage to the emission control system.**

## If the engine turns over normally but doesn't start

- Check the fuel level and add fuel if necessary.

If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

## JUMP STARTING

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:**

**Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.**

**Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.**

**Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.**

**Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.**

**Keep batteries out of reach of children.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.**

**If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.**

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.**
- **NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to your vehicle:**

- **Only use a 12-volt power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.**

### Information

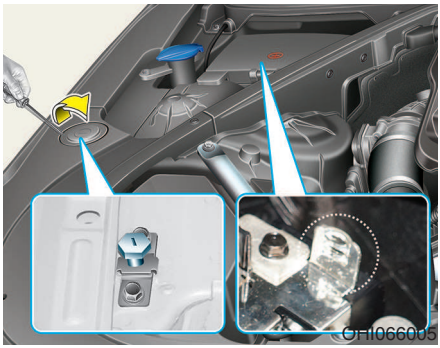
**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.**

### *Jump starting procedure*

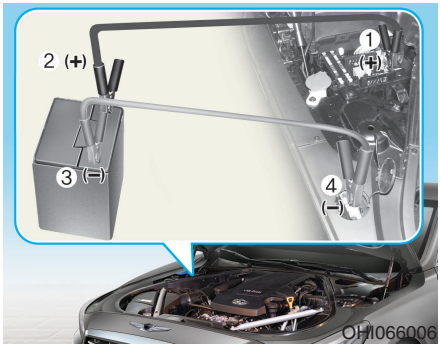
### Information

**Your vehicle has a battery in the trunk room, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the engine room.**

1. Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicles to touch.
2. Avoid fans or any moving parts in the engine compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
3. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and set the parking brakes. Turn both vehicles OFF.
4. Open the engine hood.




5. Open the small service cover with a screwdriver.
6. Remove the engine room fuse box cover.




7. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
8. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
9. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).

10. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

    Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

11. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run at approximately 2,000 rpm for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.

If your vehicle will not start after a few attempts, it probably requires servicing. In this event please seek qualified assistance. If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that your vehicle be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

## Push-starting

Vehicles equipped with automatic transmission cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this chapter for jump-starting.

**⚠ WARNING**

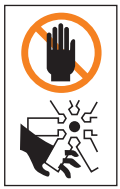
**Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.**

## IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine may be overheating. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (Park) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is ON, turn it OFF.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.

**⚠ WARNING**



**While the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving parts such as the cooling fan and drive belt to prevent serious injury.**

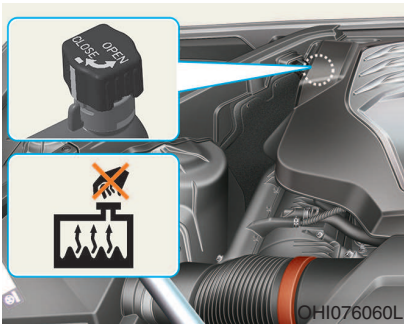
4. Check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop.)
5. If engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER remove the radiator cap, drain plug and heater hose connector cap (refer to the picture below) while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

**Turn the engine off and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**

■ **Heater hose connector cap (for Tau Engine)**




6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

***NOTICE***

- **Serious loss of coolant indicates a leak in the cooling system and we recommend the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.**

# TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

(1) Low Tire Pressure Telltale/ TPMS Malfunction Indicator

(2) Low tire pressure position telltale and tire pressure telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

## Check tire pressure

- You can check the tire pressure in the Assist Mode on the cluster.
  - Refer to "LCD Modes" in chapter 3.
- Tire pressure is displayed 1~2 minutes later after driving.
- If tire pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, "Drive to display" message displays. After driving, check the tire pressure.
- The displayed tire pressure values may differ from those measured with a tire pressure gauge.
- You can change the tire pressure unit in the User Settings mode on the cluster.
  - psi, kpa, bar (Refer to “User Settings Mode” in chapter 3).

## Tire pressure monitoring system

**⚠ WARNING**

**Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Information

**If any of the below happens, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

1. **The low tire pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when Engine Start/Stop button is turned to the ON or engine is running.**
2. **The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low tire pressure position telltale remains illuminated.**

### Low tire pressure telltale

OHI046129N

### Low tire pressure position telltale and tire pressure telltale

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and warning message displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. The low tire pressure position telltale light will indicate which tire is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with a spare tire.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replacing the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the below will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

## Information

**The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure sensor.**

**NOTICE**

**In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may illuminate if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a lowering of tire pressure.**

**When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Low pressure damage**

**Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**

**Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.**

## TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### *i* Information

**If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the low tire pressure position telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tire.**

**NOTICE**

- **The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).**
- **The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).**

## Changing a tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

***NOTICE***

**NEVER use a puncture-repairing agent to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tire. The tire sealant can damage the tire pressure sensor. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor.**

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tires serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replacing the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the below will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

You may not be able identify a low tire by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure the tire's inflation pressure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not modify the vehicle; it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

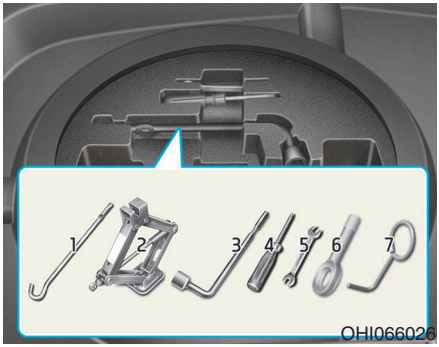
  **For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

# IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

**⚠ WARNING**

**Changing a tire can be dangerous. Follow the instructions in this section when changing a tire to reduce the risk of serious injury or death.**

## Jack and tools




① Jack handle
② Jack
③ Wheel lug nut lug wrench
④ Screw driver
⑤ Spanner
⑥ Towing hook
⑦ Tool for removing wheel cover (if equipped)

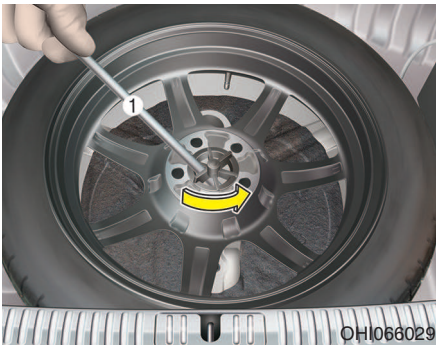
The jack, jack handle, and wheel nut lug wrench are stored in the luggage compartment under the luggage box cover.

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

Turn the winged hold down bolt counterclockwise to remove the spare tire.

Store the spare tire in the same compartment by turning the winged hold down bolt clockwise.

To prevent the spare tire and tools from "rattling", store them in their proper location.




If it is hard to loosen the tire hold-down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the jack handle.

1. Put the jack handle (1) inside of the tire hold-down wing bolt.
2. Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise with the jack handle.

**NOTICE**

**When you remove or store the spare tire, do not contact or bump the battery with the spare tire.**

**Contacting or bumping the battery may cause failure of electrical circuits.**

## Changing tires

**⚠ WARNING**

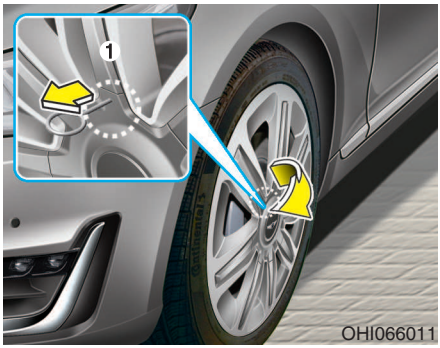
**A vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby. Take the following safety precautions:**

- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **NEVER attempt to change a tire in the lane of traffic. ALWAYS move the vehicle completely off the road on level, firm ground away from traffic before trying to change a tire. If you cannot find a level, firm place off the road, call a towing service for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the jack provided with the vehicle.**
- **ALWAYS place the jack on the designated jacking positions on the vehicle and NEVER on the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.**
- **Keep children away from the road and the vehicle.**

Follow these steps to change your vehicle's tire:

1. Park on a level, firm surface.
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park), apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position.
3. Press the hazard warning flasher button.
4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.

5. Block both the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite of the tire you are changing.

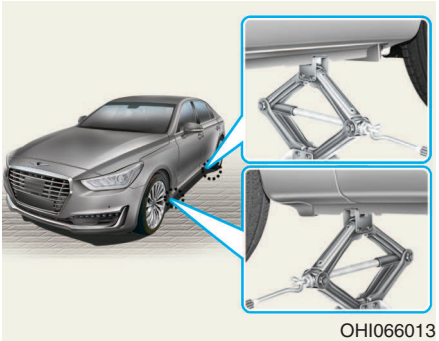



6. Insert the tool (1) into the hole and pull out the wheel cover. (if equipped)

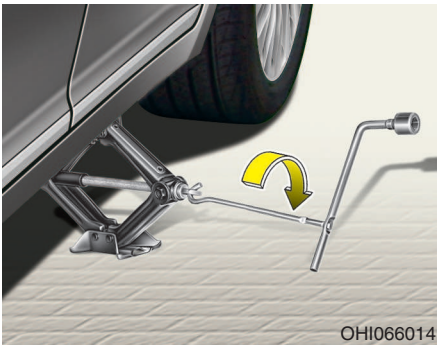
**NOTICE**

**When removing the wheel cover, if you use any other tool except the tool (1), the wheel cover may be damaged.**

7. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each in the order shown above, but do not remove any lug nuts until the tire has been raised off of the ground.


OHI066013

8. Place the jack at the designated jacking position under the frame closest to the tire you are changing. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot. Never jack any other position or part of the vehicle. It may damage to the side seal molding.


OHI066014

9. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire clears the ground. Make sure the vehicle is stable on the jack.

10. Loosen the lug nuts with the wheel lug nut wrench and remove them with your fingers. Remove the wheel from the studs and lay it flat on the ground out of the way. Remove any dirt or debris from the studs, mounting surfaces, and wheel.
11. Install the spare tire onto the studs of the hub.
12. Tighten the lug nuts with your fingers onto the studs with the smaller end of the lug nuts closest to the wheel.
13. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

OHI066015

14. Use the wheel lug nut wrench to tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Double-check each lug nut until they are tight. After changing tires, we recommend that an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products tighten the lug nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible. **The wheel lug nut should be tightened to 11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft).**

If you have a tire gauge, check the tire pressure (see “Tires and Wheels” in chapter 8 for tire pressure instructions.). If the pressure is lower or higher than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and adjust it to the recommended pressure. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible. After changing tires, secure the flat tire and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

### Information

**Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing a spare tire. Adjust it to the recommended pressure.**

**NOTICE**

**Your vehicle has metric threads on the studs and lug nuts. Make certain during tire changing that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled. If you have to replace your lug nuts make sure they have metric threads to avoid damaging the studs and ensure the wheel is properly secured to the hub. We recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.**

If any of the equipment such as the jack, lug nuts, studs, or other equipment is damaged or in poor condition, do not attempt to change the tire and call for assistance.

### *Use of compact spare tires*

Compact spare tires are designed for emergency use only. Drive carefully on the compact spare tire and always follow the safety precautions.

**WARNING**

**To prevent compact spare tire failure and loss of control possibly resulting in an accident:**

- **Use the compact spare tire only in an emergency.**
- **NEVER operate your vehicle over 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Do not exceed the vehicle’s maximum load rating or the load carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.**
- **Do not use the compact spare tire continuously. Repair or replace the original tire as soon as possible to avoid failure of the compact spare tire.**
- **On AWD vehicles, do not use the compact spare tire continuously.**

  **It may damage to the AWD driving system or the differential. Temporarily use the compact spare tire for emergency only.**

When driving with the compact spare tire mounted to your vehicle:

- Check the tire pressure after installing the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire's tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

### Information

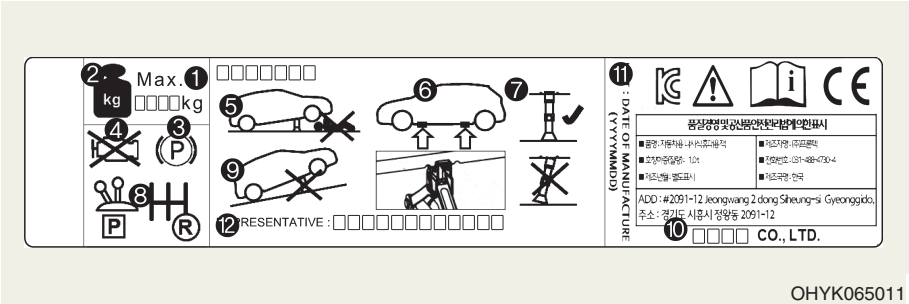
**When the original tire and wheel are repaired and reinstalled on the vehicle, the lug nut torque must be set correctly. The correct lug nut tightening torque is 11~13 kgf.m (79~94 lbf.ft).**

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damaging the compact spare tire and your vehicle:**

- **Drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards, such as a potholes or debris.**
- **Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 25 mm (1 inch).**
- **Do not use tire chains on the compact spare tire. Because of the smaller size, a tire chain will not fit properly.**
- **Do not use the compact spare tire on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel.**

## Jack label




OHYK065011

❊ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Shift into Reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission or move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

# EC Declaration of conformity for Jack

CE

**EC Declaration of Conformity**
**according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC**

We, **SAMKI IND. CO., LTD.**
**# 22, Hyojuk3-Gil, Buk-Gu, Ulsan, Korea**
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

**Product : Jack Assembly**
**Type Designation(s) : Jack Assembly-600kg, Jack Assembly-700kg**
**Jack Assembly-800kg, Jack Assembly-1000kg**
**Jack Assembly-1200kg, Jack Assembly-1500kg**
**Serial No. : N/A**
**Year of Manufacture : 2013**
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s);

| | |
|---|---|
| EN ISO12100 (2010) | Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction |
| EN ISO12100-2/A1 (2009) | Safety of machinery - Basic concepts, general principles for design, Part 2 : Technical principles |
| EN 1494/A1 (2008) | Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment |

following the provisions of Directive(s);

| | |
|---|---|
| 2006/42/EC | Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun, 9, 2006) |

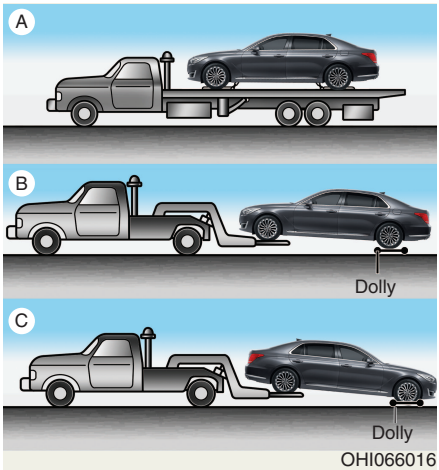
Ulsan , Korea / Jul .25 .2013 Hyun Duck, Cho President
(Place and date of issue)(name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

* T.C.F Compiling Person: **Safenet Limited (European Notified body : 1674 )**
**Denford Garage, Denford, Kettering Northants, NN14 4EQ, England**

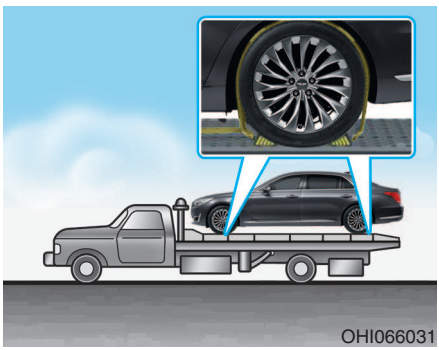
JACKDOC14S

# TOWING

## Towing service




If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.




When towing the vehicle by flatbed equipment, secure wheels by using chocks and tie-down straps (or soft belts).

Do not place straps over body panels or through the wheels.

**NOTICE**

**Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.**

On AWD vehicles, your vehicle must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

**NOTICE**

**The AWD vehicle should never be towed with the wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transmission or the AWD system.**

On 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

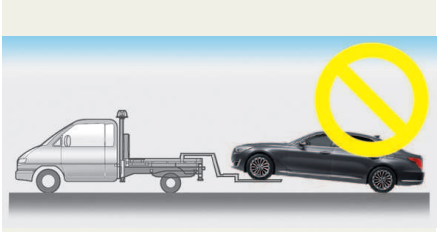
When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.

**⚠ WARNING**

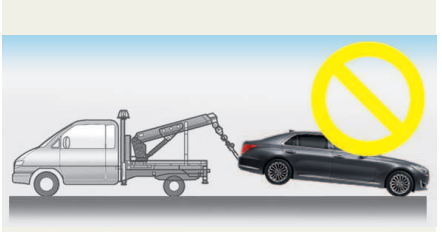
**If equipped with rollover sensor**

**If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bags, set the Engine Start/Stop button to OFF or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.**

**The side and curtain air bags may deploy when the ignition is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**



OHI066019



OHI066018

***NOTICE***

- **Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.**
- **Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.**

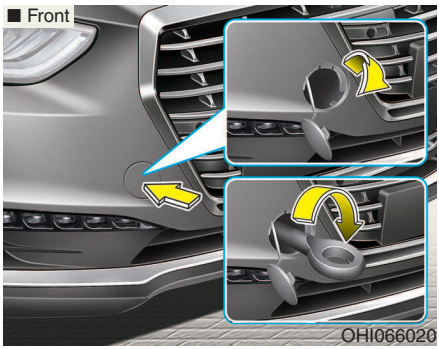
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies:

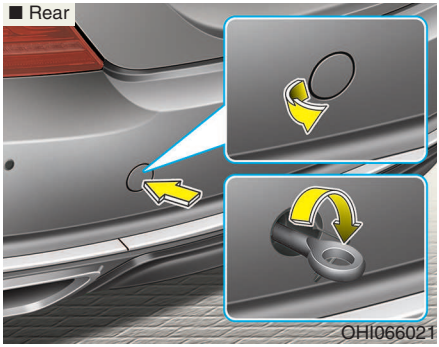
1. Set the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position.
2. Place the shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

***NOTICE***

**Failure to place the shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.**

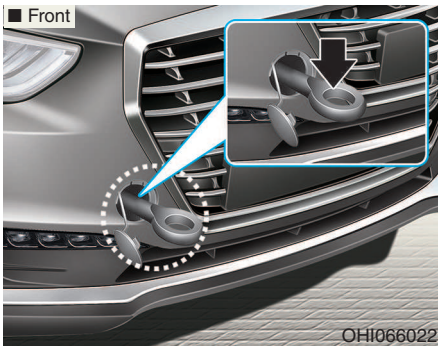
## Removable towing hook

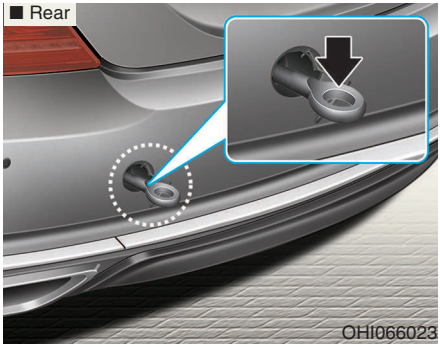



1. Open the trunk, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the front bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

## Emergency towing



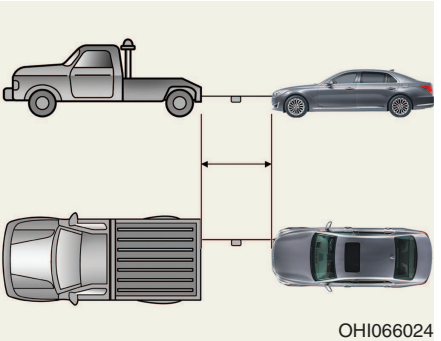

If towing is necessary, we recommend you have it done by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook at the front (or rear) of the vehicle.

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle with a cable or chain. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in

good condition.




Always follow these emergency towing precautions:

- Place the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position so the steering wheel is not locked.
- Place the shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Depress the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced braking performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- Use a vehicle heavier than your own to tow your vehicle.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.

# EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency commodities to help you respond to emergency situation.

## Fire extinguisher

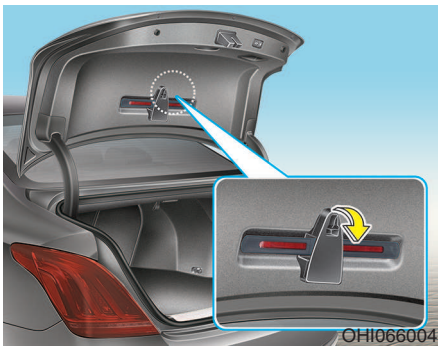
If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, follow these steps carefully.

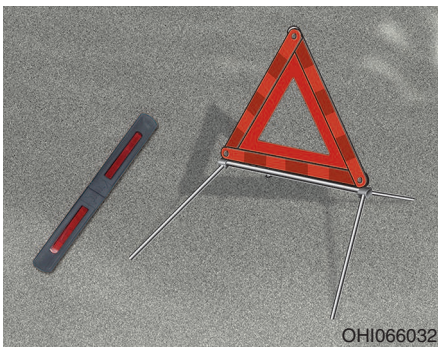
1. Pull out the safety pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle towards the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch carefully since it may re-ignite.

## First aid kit

Supplies for use in giving first aid such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape, etc. are provided.

## Triangle reflector




Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to problems.

## Tire pressure gauge (if equipped)

Tires normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a air periodically and usually it is not a sign of a leaking tire, but of normal wear. Always check tire pressure when the tires are cold because tire pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tire pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tire.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tire valve. Some air will leak as you begin and more will leak if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tire pressure on the gauge to see whether the tire pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tire pressure to the specified pressure. Refer to "Tires and Wheels" in chapter 8.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

# Maintenance


Engine compartment .....7-3

Maintenance services.....7-6
- Owner's responsibility .....7-6
- Owner maintenance precautions .....7-6

Owner's maintenance .....7-7
- Owner maintenance schedule .....7-8

Scheduled maintenance service .....7-10
- Normal maintenance schedule .....7-11
- Maintenance under severe usage conditions .....7-16

Explanation of scheduled maintenance items.....7-18

Engine oil.....7-21
- Checking the engine oil level .....7-21
- Changing the engine oil and filter .....7-22

Engine coolant.....7-23
- Checking the coolant level .....7-23
- Changing the coolant.....7-26

Brake fluid.....7-27
- Checking the brake fluid level.....7-27

Washer fluid.....7-29
- Checking the washer fluid level .....7-29

Air cleaner .....7-30
- Filter replacement .....7-30

Climate control air filter .....7-31
- Filter inspection .....7-31
- Filter replacement .....7-31

Wiper blades .....7-33
- Blade inspection.....7-33
- Blade replacement.....7-33

# Maintenance


Battery ..... 7-35
For best battery service ..... 7-35
Battery capacity label ..... 7-37
Battery recharging ..... 7-37
Reset items ..... 7-38
Tires and wheels ..... 7-39
Tire care ..... 7-39
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures ..... 7-39
Checking tire inflation pressure ..... 7-40
Tire rotation ..... 7-42
Wheel alignment and tire balance ..... 7-43
Tire replacement ..... 7-43
Wheel replacement ..... 7-45
Tire traction ..... 7-45
Tire maintenance ..... 7-45
Tire sidewall labeling ..... 7-45
Low aspect ratio tire ..... 7-49
Fuses ..... 7-50
Fuse/Relay panel description ..... 7-55
Light bulbs ..... 7-68
Headlamp, position lamp, front turn signal lamp, daytime running lamp bulb replacement ..... 7-69
Side repeater lamp replacement ..... 7-70
Headlamp aiming - For Europe ..... 7-70
Rear combination light bulb replacement ..... 7-74
High mounted stop lamp replacement ..... 7-74
License plate light bulb replacement ..... 7-74
Interior light bulb replacement ..... 7-75
Appearance care ..... 7-76
Exterior care ..... 7-76
Emission control system ..... 7-83
Crankcase emission control system ..... 7-83
Evaporative emission control system ..... 7-83
Exhaust emission control system ..... 7-84

# ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Gasoline Engine (Lambda 3.3 T-GDI)**

**The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

OHI076001N

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Radiator cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Engine oil filler cap
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box
9. Jumper terminal

■ **Gasoline Engine (Lambda 3.8 GDI)**

**The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

OHI076002N

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Radiator cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Engine oil filler cap
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box
9. Jumper terminal

■ **Gasoline Engine (Tau 5.0 GDI)**

**The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

OHI076003N

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Radiator cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Engine oil filler cap
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box
9. Jumper terminal

# MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products meets Genesis Branded Vehicle's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis Branded Vehicle in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

## Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

## Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform. Several procedures can be done only by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products with special tools.

Your vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

**NOTICE**

**Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

## OWNER MAINTENANCE

**⚠ WARNING**

**Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. ALWAYS follow these precautions for performing maintenance work:**

- **Park your vehicle on level ground, move the shift lever into the P (Park, for automatic transmission vehicle) position, apply the parking brake, place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.**
- **Block the tires (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

  **Remove loose clothing or jewelry that can become entangled in moving parts.**
- **If you must run the engine during maintenance, do so out doors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.**
- **Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery and fuel-related parts.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Touching metal parts**

**Do not touch metal parts (including strut bars) while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so could result in serious personal injury. Turn the engine off and wait until the metal parts cool down to perform maintenance work on the vehicle.**

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

## Owner maintenance schedule

***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tires.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.**

***While operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the automatic transmission P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

***At least monthly:***

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare for tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel lug nuts.

***At least twice a year:***
***(i.e., every Spring and Fall)***

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlamp alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

***At least once a year:***

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Lubricate door checker
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply.

If any of the following conditions apply, you must follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km(10 miles) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in the condition of inflowing sand or dust into engine
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition

*If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.*

## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** |
| | | **Miles×1,000** | **10** | **20** | **30** | **40** | **50** | **60** | **70** | **80** |
| | | **Km×1,000** | **15** | **30** | **45** | **60** | **75** | **90** | **105** | **120** |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter *1 | 3.3 T-GDI | | Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 6 months | | | | | | | |
| | 3.8 GDI | Except Middle East, Central & South America | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| | | For Middle East, Central & South America | Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months | | | | | | | |
| | 5.0 GDI | Except Middle East | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| | | For Middle East | Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months | | | | | | | |
| Drive belts *2 | Except Europe, For Russia | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | | At first, inspect at 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months, after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months | | | | | | | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** |
| | **Miles×1,000** | **10** | **20** | **30** | **40** | **50** | **60** | **70** | **80** |
| | **Km×1,000** | **15** | **30** | **45** | **60** | **75** | **90** | **105** | **120** |
| Fuel additives *3 | Except Europe, For Russia | Add every 10,000 km or 6 months | | | | | | | |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | Add every 15,000 km or 12 months | | | | | | | |
| Air cleaner filter | Except Middle East | I | I | R | I | I | R | I | I |
| | For Middle East | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Spark plugs *4 | 3.3 T-GDI | Replace every 75,000 km | | | | | | | |
| | 3.8 GDI | Replace every 165,000 km | | | | | | | |
| | 5.0 GDI | | | | | | | | |
| Valve clearance (For 3.3 T-GDI/3.8 GDI Engine) *4 *5 | | | | | | | I | | |
| Vapor hose and fuel filler cap | | | | | I | | | | I |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*3 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*4 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*5 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| | Km×1,000 | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Vacuum hose and crankcase ventilation hoses | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Fuel tank air filter | Except Europe, For Russia | | I | | R | | I | | R |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | | | | I | | | | I |
| Fuel filter *6 | Except Europe, For Russia | | I | | R | | I | | R |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | | | | I | | | | I |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections | | | | | I | | | | I |
| Cooling system | | Inspect "Coolant level adjustment and leak" every day. At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months | | | | | | | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*6 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for details.

## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| | Km×1,000 | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Engine coolant *7 | Except Europe, For Russia | At first, replace at 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months : after that, replace every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 24 months | | | | | | | |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | At first, replace at 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months : after that, replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months | | | | | | | |
| Battery condition | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| All electrical systems | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake pedal | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Parking brake | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Brake fluid | Except Europe, For Russia | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | I | R | I | R | I | R | I | R |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*7 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage. For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| | Km×1,000 | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| Disc brakes and pads | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Driveshaft and boots | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Tire (pressure & tread wear) | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Front suspension ball joints | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Bolt and nuts on chassis and body | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Exhaust system | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Air conditioner refrigerant | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Air conditioner compressor | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Climate control air filter | Except Europe, For Russia | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| | For Europe, Except Russia | I | R | I | R | I | R | I | R |
| Automatic transmission fluid | | No check, No service required | | | | | | | |
| Front(AWD)/Rear differential oil *8 | | | | | I | | | | I |
| Propeller shaft | | | I | | I | | I | | I |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*8 : Front/Rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

## MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace  I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | | | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | R | 3.3 T-GDI | | 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months | A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K |
| | | 3.8 GDI | Except Middle East, Central & South America | 7,500 km (4,500 miles) or 6 months | |
| | | | For Middle East, Central & South America | 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months | |
| | | 5.0 GDI | Except Middle East | 7,500 km (4,500 miles) or 6 months | |
| | | | For Middle East | 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months | |
| Air cleaner filter | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | | | C, E |
| Spark plugs | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | | | A, B, H, I |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | | | C, D, E, F, G |
| Propeller shaft | I | Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months | | | C, E |
| Front suspension ball joints | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | | | C, D, E, F, G |
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | | | C, D, E, G, H |

| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Parking brake | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | | C, D, G, H |
| Driveshaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | | C, D, E, F, H |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | | C, E |
| Automatic transmission fluid | R | Except for Europe | Every 100,000 km (62,000 miles) | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| | | For Europe | Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles) | |
| Front(AWD)/Rear differential oil | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | | C, G, H, I, J |

## Severe driving conditions

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in the condition of inflowing sand or dust into engine
F : Driving in heavy traffic area
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads
H : Towing a trailer (if equipped)
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

# EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

## Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

## Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

**NOTICE**

**When you are inspecting the belt, place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF or ACC position.**

## Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

## Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

## Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not disconnect and inspect spark plugs when the engine is hot. You may burn yourself.**

## Valve clearance (3.3 T-GDI / 3.8 GDI Engine)

Inspect excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

## Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

## Automatic transmission fluid

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.
We recommend that the automatic transmission fluid changed by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products according to the maintenance schedule.

**i Information**

**Automatic transmission fluid color is basically red.**

**As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker.**

**It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.**

***NOTICE***

**The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transmission malfunction and failure.**

**Use only specified automatic transmission fluid. (Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in section 8.)**

## Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

## Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

## Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Genesis Branded Vehicle web site.

(**http://service.hyundai-motor.com**)

## Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

## Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

## Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

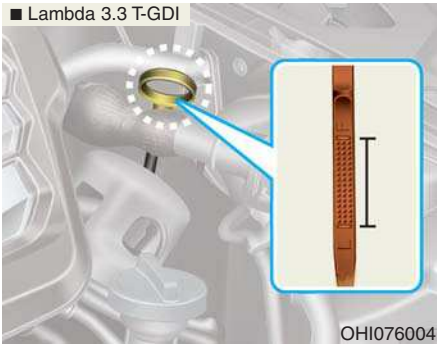
## Air conditioning refrigerant/ compressor

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

# ENGINE OIL

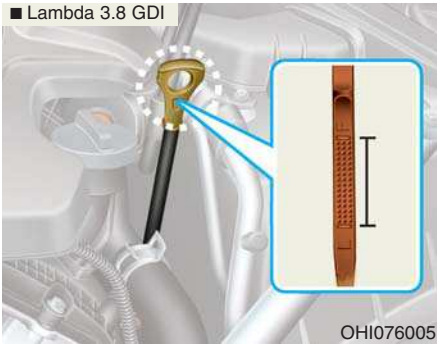
## Checking the engine oil level

■ Lambda 3.3 T-GDI



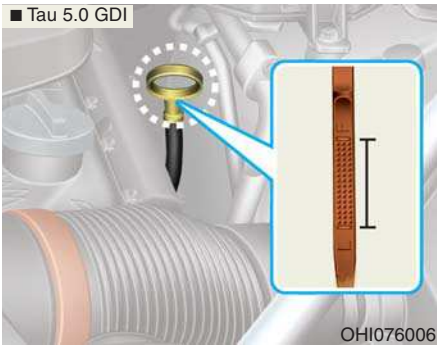

OHI076004

■ Lambda 3.8 GDI




OHI076005

■ Tau 5.0 GDI




OHI076006

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Radiator hose**

**Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.**

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

***NOTICE***

- **Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.**
- **Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.**
- **When you wipe the oil level gauge, you should wipe it with a clean cloth. When mixed with debris, it can cause engine damage.**

■ Lambda 3.3 T-GDI

OHI076007

■ Lambda 3.8 GDI

OHI076008

■ Tau 5.0 GDI

OHI076009

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.**

*Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

## Changing the engine oil and filter

HYUNDAI RECOMMENDS Shell HELIX Motor oils

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.**

# ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

**NOTICE**

- **When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.**
- **Do not drive with no engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.**

## Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING**

**Removing radiator cap**

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system.**

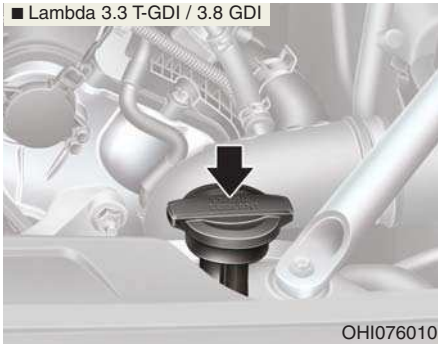
  **When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**
- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.**

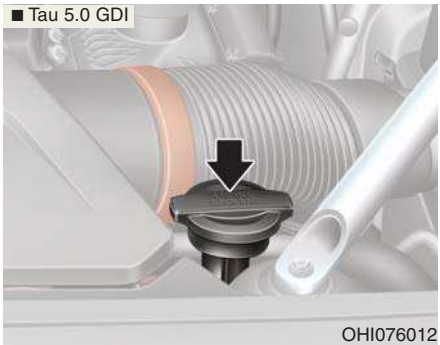
**The electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the negative battery cable.**

■ Lambda 3.3 T-GDI / 3.8 GDI



OHI076010

■ Tau 5.0 GDI



OHI076012

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (MAX) and L (MIN) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionized) or soft water. Bring the level to F (MAX), but do not overfill.

If frequent additions are required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

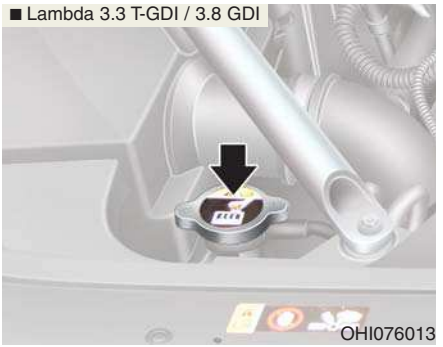
### *Recommended engine coolant*

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an phosphate-based ethylene glycol coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| -15°C (5°F) | 35 | 65 |
| -25°C (-13°F) | 40 | 60 |
| -35°C (-31°F) | 50 | 50 |
| -45°C (-49°F) | 60 | 40 |

■ Lambda 3.3 T-GDI / 3.8 GDI




■ Tau 5.0 GDI

**⚠ WARNING**

**Radiator cap**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.**

## Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

**Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as generator.**

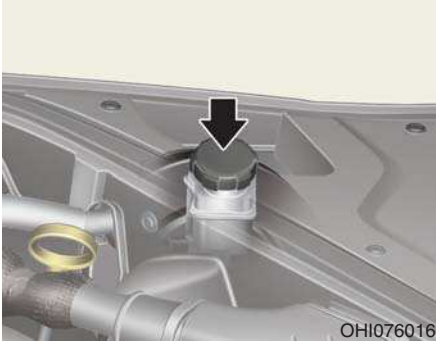
**⚠ WARNING**

**Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**

# BRAKE FLUID

## Checking the brake fluid level




Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings.

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

*Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

*Never mix different types of fluid.*

**⚠ WARNING**

**Loss of brake fluid**

**In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

**i Information**

**Before removing the brake filler cap, read the warning on the cap.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Clean filler cap before removing. Use only DOT3 or DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Brake fluid**

**When changing and adding brake fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

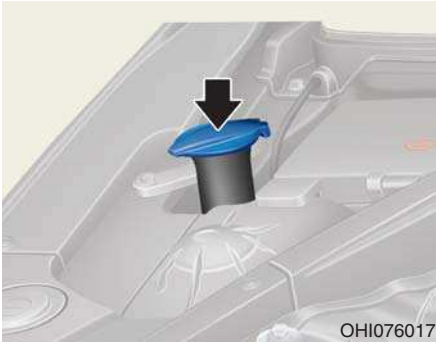
**NOTICE**

**Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result. Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid.**

**A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts.**

# WASHER FLUID

## Checking the washer fluid level




The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary.

Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available.

However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

### Information

**A warning message is displayed in the instrument cluster LCD display if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty. Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.**

**For more information, refer to "LCD Display Messages" in chapter 3.**

**NOTICE**

**Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windshield Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windshield washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

# AIR CLEANER

## Filter replacement

OHI076018

The air cleaner filter can be cleaned for inspection using compressed air.

Do not attempt to wash or to rinse it, as water will damage the filter. If soiled, the air cleaner filter must be replaced.

We recommend that you visit an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace air cleaner filter.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this section.)*

**NOTICE**

- **Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.**
- **When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.**
- **We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

# CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER

## Filter inspection

If the vehicle is operated in the severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

### Information

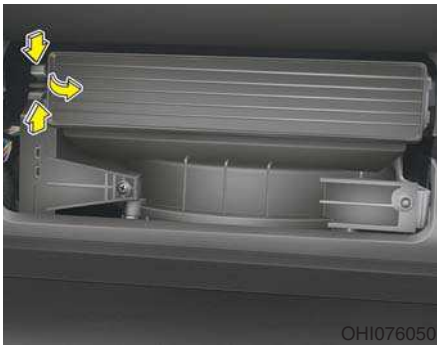
**Install a new climate control air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol (↓) facing downwards.**

**Otherwise, the climate control effects may decrease, possibly with a noise.**

## Filter replacement

1. Open the glove box and remove the support pin (1).

2. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.




3. Remove the climate control air filter case while pressing the lock on the left side of the cover.

4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

# WIPER BLADES

## Blade inspection

### Information

**Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.**

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.**

## Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.**

**NOTICE**

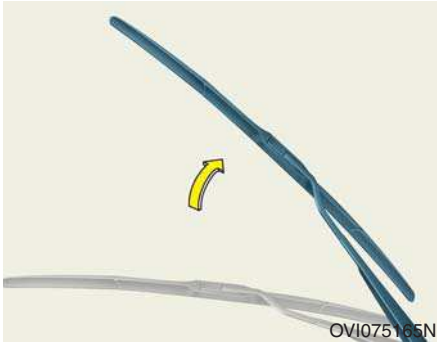
**The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.**

### *Front windshield wiper blade*

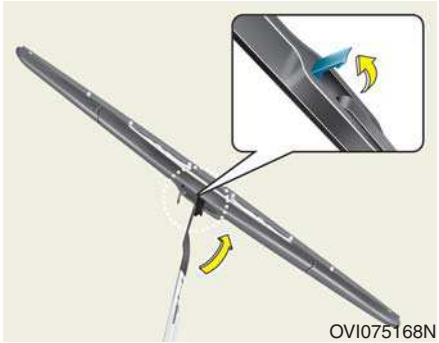
For your convenience, move the windshield wiper blades to the service position as follows;
After turning off the engine, move the wiper switch to the single wiping (MIST) position within 20 seconds and hold the switch more than 2 seconds until the wiper blade is in the fully up position.

**NOTICE**

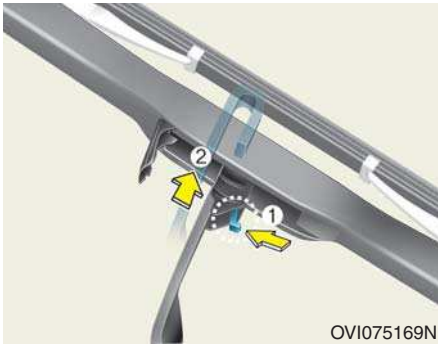
**Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.**




1. Raise the wiper arm.




2. Open the wiper blade clip and slightly rotate the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.




3. Push the clip (1) and push up the wiper arm (2).

4. Push down the wiper arm (3).
5. Install a blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
6. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
7. Place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position. The wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.

# BATTERY

## For best battery service

■ Except for Brazil

■ For Brazil

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:**

**Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.**

**Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.**

**Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.**

**Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.**

**Keep batteries out of reach of children.**

**Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.**

**If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.**

**(Continued)**

(Continued)

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
- The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.

**NOTICE**

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- Only use a 12-volt power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.

## Information

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

**NOTICE**

If you are not able to start the engine after a front or rear collision, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged.

Never use unauthorized devices.

## Battery capacity label

■ Example

OLMB073072_HI

❊ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. CMF60L-BCI : The Genesis Branded Vehicle model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

## Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:**

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

■ Except for Brazil

■ For Brazil

## Information

**The battery is in the trunk.**

**When replacing the battery, disconnect the negative (-) cable (1) and remove the positive (+) battery fuse box (2).**

**NOTICE**

**AGM battery**

- **Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.**
- **When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.**

## Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See chapter 3)
- Sunroof (See chapter 3)
- Trip computer (See chapter 3)
- Climate control system (See chapter 3)
- Power trunk (See chapter 3)
- Seat position memory system (See chapter 3)
- Rear door window curtain (See section 3)

# TIRES AND WHEELS

## Tire care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

## Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tire underinflation**

**Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.**

***NOTICE***

- **Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.**

**NOTICE**

- **Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.**
- **Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tire inflation**

**Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.**

**NOTICE**

**Tire pressure**

**Always observe the following:**

- **Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)**
- **Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.**
- **Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.**

## Checking tire inflation pressure

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

### *How to check*

Use a good quality gage to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.**
- **Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.**
- **Worn tires can cause accidents. Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire.**
  **Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.**

## Tire rotation

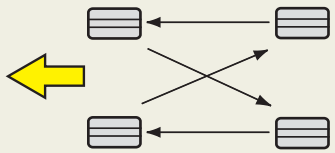
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

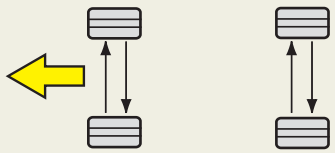
Refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.

■ 18inch tire



OHI076057

■ 19inch tire



OHI076058

*Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.*

### Information

**If your tire is unsymmetrical tire, check the outside and inside marked in tire.**

**If the inside tire is installed on outside, the vehicle driving and wear performance may be damaged.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the compact spare tire for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

## Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

***NOTICE***

**Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.**

## Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

***NOTICE***

**When replacing the tires, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 1,000 km (620 miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates while driving, the tire is out of balance. Align the tire balance. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Replacing tires**

- **Driving on worn-out tires is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide for safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tire and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.**
- **The use of any other tire size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body to tire clearance, snow tire clearance, and speedometer reliability.**
- **It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tire size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) (if equipped) to work irregularly.**
- **For replacement with an unsymmetrical tire, you should check the outside/inside of the unsymmetrical tire. Make sure that the outside mark should locate in the outward direction. If not, it may adversely affect the vehicle performance, riding comfort, and tire worn-out rates.**

### *Compact spare tire replacement*

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

## Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlamp aim and bumper height.**

## Tire traction

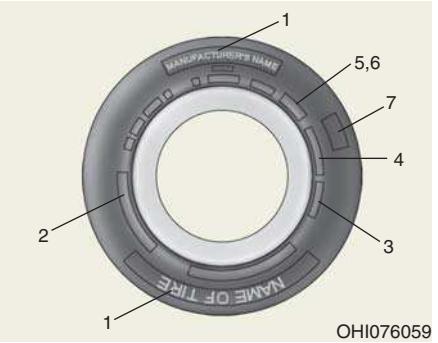
Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

## Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

## Tire sidewall labeling




This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

### *1. Manufacturer or brand name*

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

### *2. Tire size designation*

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**245/50 R18 100W**

245 - Tire width in millimeters.

50 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

100 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

W - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

### Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

**8.0J X 18**

8.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

### Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car tires. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| H | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| W | 270 km/h (168 mph) |
| Y | 300 km/h (186 mph) |

### *3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)*

Any tires that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, tire strength and performance, decline with age naturally (even unused spare tires). Therefore, the tires (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.
For example:
DOT XXXX XXXX 2216 represents that the tire was produced in the 22th week of 2016.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tire age**

**Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tires generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this Warning can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.**

### *4. Tire ply composition and material*

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric are in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

### *5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure*

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

### *6. Maximum load rating*

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

### *7. Uniform tire quality grading*

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

### Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

### Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tires ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

### Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by the law.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tire temperature**

**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.**

## Low Aspect Ratio Tires

Low aspect ratio tires, the aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tire. Also low aspect ratio tires tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tires.

**NOTICE**

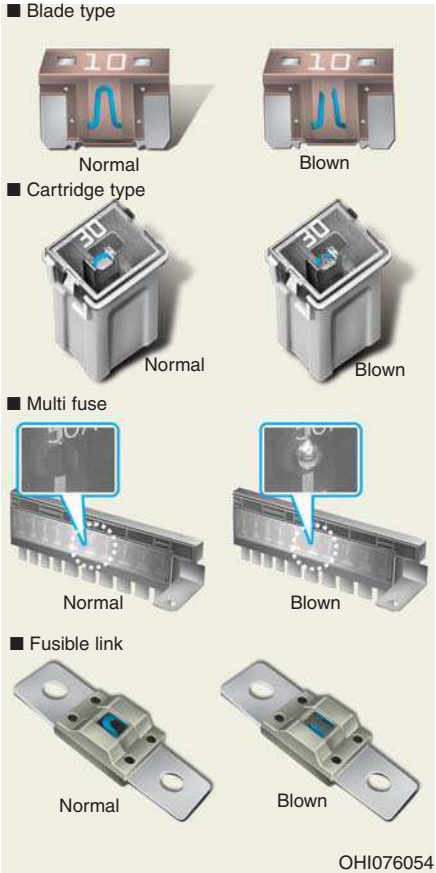
**Because the sidewall of a low aspect ratio tire is shorter than a standard tire, the rim of the wheel and the tire itself is more easily susceptible to damage. Use caution when driving and follow the guidelines below to help minimize damage to the wheel and tire:**

- **When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.**
- **When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.**
- **If the tire is subjected to a severe impact, have the tire and wheel inspected by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Inspect the tire condition and pressure every 1,800 miles (3,000km).**

**NOTICE**

- **It is not easy to recognize tire damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tire damage, have the tire checked or replaced because the tire damage may cause air leakage from the tire.**
- **If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.**

# FUSES




A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 4 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, another in the engine compartment, and two others in the trunk compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

*Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, multi fuse and fusible link for higher amperage ratings.*

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fuse replacement**

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly cause a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.**

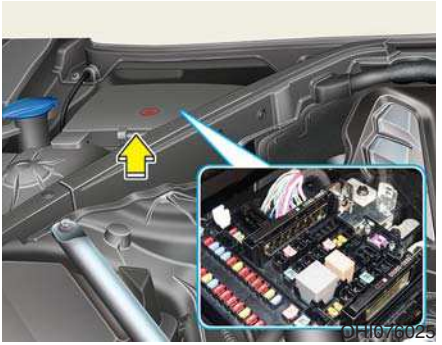
**i Information**

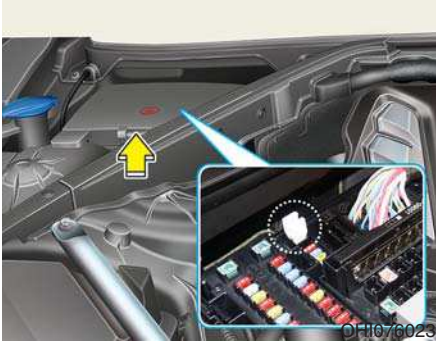
**The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.**

**NOTICE**

- **When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.**
- **Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**
- **Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.**

### *Engine compartment panel fuse replacement*



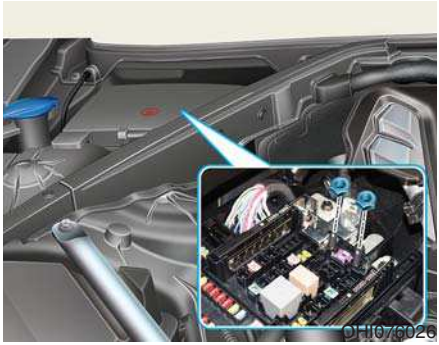




1. Turn the engine start/stop button and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**NOTICE**

**After checking the fuse box in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse box cover. If not, electrical failures may occur from water leaking in.**

### *Main fuse*



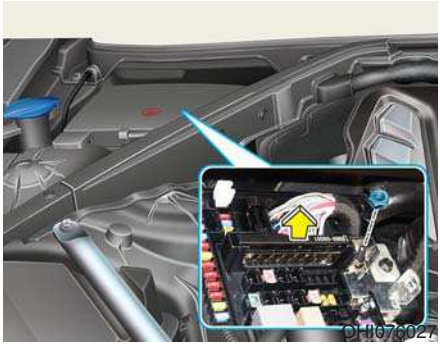

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

**Information**

**If the main fuse is blown, even though the engine compartment panel fuse and inner fuse are not blown, if the electrical system is not operated, the main fuse may be blown. The main fuse is connected with other parts and system. We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Multi fuse*



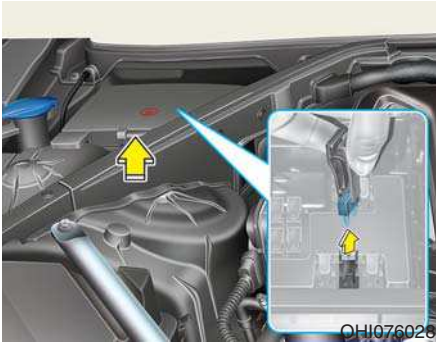

If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the bolts shown in the picture above.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

**Information**

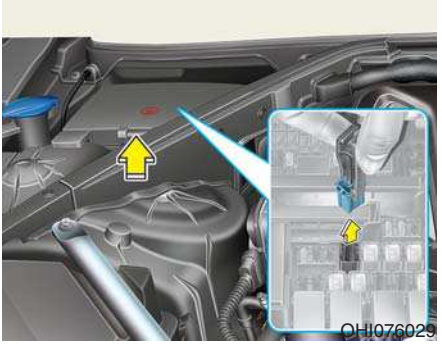
**If the multi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

### *Blade type fuse*




Before inspecting a fuse, you should turn OFF the engine as well as the other electric system switches. If a fuse is blown out, remove the blown-out fuse and install a new fuse of the same capacity by using the fuse puller, which is prepared inside the fuse box in the engine compartment. A new fuse may be prepared along with the fuse puller. However, if not, you may temporarily select/use a fuse of the other systems, which do not affect the vehicle operation, such as the audio system.

### *Cartridge type fuse*

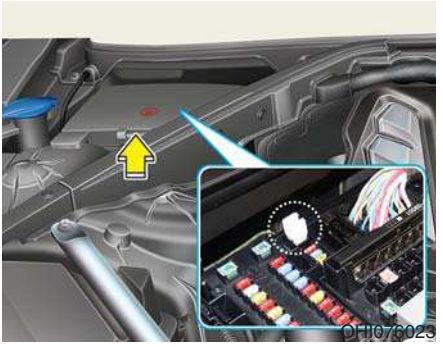



Before inspecting a fuse, you should turn OFF the engine as well as the other electric system switches. If a fuse is blown out, remove the blown-out fuse and install a new fuse of the same capacity.

Pay extreme caution not to damage the blown-out fuse while removing it.

### *Inner panel fuse replacement*

1. Turn the Engine Start/Stop button and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.




3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

*If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse block in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced with the same rating.

### *Fuse switch*

Always, place the fuse switch to the ON position.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and the smart key may not work properly.

### Information

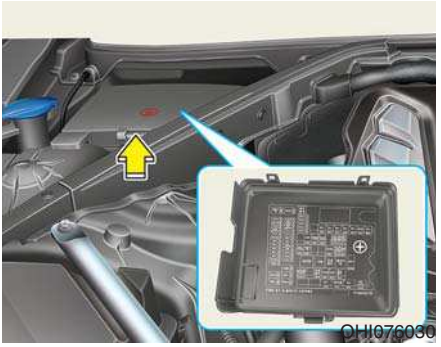
**If the fuse switch is OFF, the above message will appear.**

**NOTICE**

- **Always place the fuse switch in the ON position while driving the vehicle.**
- **Place the fuse switch in the OFF position when the vehicle is parked more than a month to prevent battery discharge.**
- **Do not move the transportation fuse switch repeatedly. The fuse switch may be damaged.**

## Fuse/Relay panel description

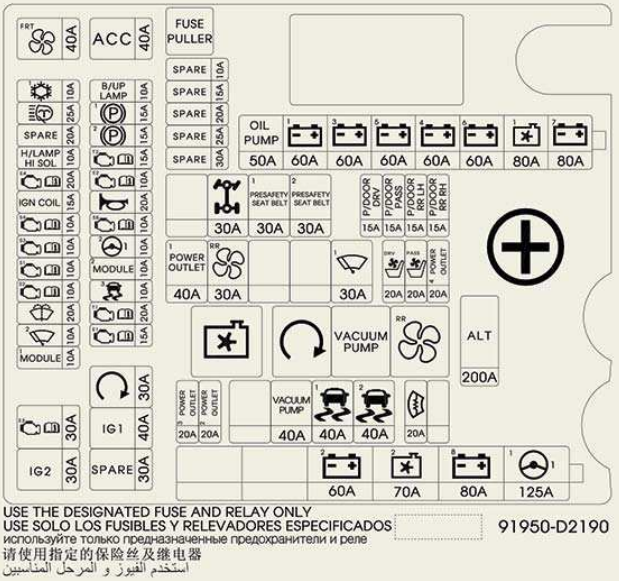
### *Engine compartment fuse panel*




Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

## Information

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**




OHI076031L

## Engine compartment fuse panel

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| **ALT** | ALT | 200A | Alternator, Multifuse (BATT) - F12/F13/F14/ F15, Fuse - F24/F25/F28/F29/F30/F31/F33/F34/F35/ F36/ F37/F38/F39 |
| 1 | B+1 | 60A | IGPM (IPS1, Fuse - F36, Leak Current Autocut Device (Fuse - F5/F18/F19/F26/F27/F42/F49/F51/ F52)) |
| 5 | B+3 | 60A | [Except Middle East] IGPM (IPS2/IPS3, Fuse - F13/F41) |
| 5 | B+5 | 60A | IGPM (Fuse - F7/F8/F9/F14/F15/F16/F46) |
| 4 | B+4 | 60A | [Except Middle East] IGPM (IPS4/IPS5/IPS6/IPS7, Fuse - F37/F38/F39) |
| 6 | B+6 | 60A | Metal Core Block (PCB #1 Fuse - F40/F41/ F42) |
| 1 | C/FAN1 | 80A | [G6DP] [G8BE-Middle East] Cooling Fan Controller (BLDC) |
| 7 | B+7 | 80A | Metal Core Block (PCB #2 Fuse - F65/F68/F69/ F70/F71) |
| 2 | B+2 | 60A | IGPM (Fuse - F21/F22/F23/F29/F30) |
| 2 | C/FAN2 | 70A | [G6DN] [G8BE-Except Middle East] RLY. 1 (Cooling Fan Relay) |
| 8 | B+8 | 80A | Metal Core Block (PCB #1 Fuse - F51/F53/ F55) |
| 1 1 | MDPS | 125A | MDPS Unit |
| 3 **POWER OUTLET** | POWER OUTLET3 | 20A | [5:5 Seat] Rear Power Outlet #1<br>[W/O 5:5 Seat] Front Power Outlet & Cigarette Lighter |
| 2 **POWER OUTLET** | POWER OUTLET2 | 20A | [5:5 Seat] Rear Power Outlet #2<br>[W/O 5:5 Seat] Front Power Outlet & Cigarette Lighter |
| **VACUUM PUMP** | VACUUM PUMP | 40A | [G6DP] RLY. 3 (Vacuum Pump Relay) |
| 1 | ESC1 | 40A | ESC Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| 2 | ESC2 | 40A | ESC Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | DEICER | 20A | Front Deicer Relay |

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 POWER OUTLET | POWER OUTLET1 | 40A | Metal Core Block (PCB #1 - Power Outlet Relay) |
| RR | RR BLOWER | 30A | RLY. 4 (Rear Blower Relay) |
| 1 | WIPER1 | 30A | Wiper Motor |
| DRV | DRIVER CCS | 20A | Driver CCS Module |
| PASS | DRIVER CCS | 20A | Passenger CCS Module |
| 4 POWER OUTLET | POWER OUTLET4 | 20A | [W/O 5:5 Seat] Power Outlet Relay |
| | 4WD | 30A | 4WD ECM |
| 1 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT | PRESAFETY SEAT BELT1 | 30A | Pre Active Seat Belt Unit |
| 2 PRESAFETY SEAT BELT | PRESAFETY SEAT BELT2 | 30A | Pre Active Seat Belt Unit |
| P/DOOR DRV | DRIVER P/DOOR | 15A | Driver Door Latch |
| P/DOOR PASS | PASSENGER P/DOOR | 15A | Passenger Door Latch |
| P/DOOR RR LH | RR LH P/DOOR | 15A | Rear Door Latch LH |
| P/DOOR RR LH | RR RH P/DOOR | 15A | Rear Door Latch RH |
| IG2 | IGN2 | 30A | IG2 Relay |
| E3 | ECU3 | 30A | Engine Control Relay |
| 1 MODULE | MODULE1 | 10A | 4WD ECM, Active Air Flap, Smart Cruse Control Radar |
| 2 | WIPER2 | 10A | PCB #2 (Wiper Relay) |
| | WASHER | 20A | Washer Relay |
| S2 | SENSOR2 | 10A | [G6DP] Oxygen Sensor #1/#2/#3/#4<br>[G6DN] Oxygen Sensor #1/#2/#3/#4, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve #1/#2<br>[G8BE] Oxygen Sensor #1/#2/#3/#4, Electronic Thermostat |

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| S1 | SENSOR1 | 10A | [G6DP/G6DN] Oil Controlvalve #1/#2/#3/#4 (Intake/Exhaust), Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Oil Pressure Solenoid Valve<br>[G8BE] Oil Controlvalve #1/#2/#3/#4 (Intake/ Exhaust), Purge Control Solenoid Valve |
| S3 | SENSOR3 | 10A | [G6DP/G6DN] Electronic Thermostat, Rear Sub Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay)<br>[G8BE] Rear Sub Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay) |
| S4 | SENSOR4 | 10A | [G6DP] E/R Junction Block (RLY. 1 - Cooling Fan Relay)<br>[G8BE - Except Middle East] E/R Junction Block (RLY. 1 - Cooling Fan Relay), Camshaft Position Sensor #1/#2/#3/#4 (Intake/ Exhaust) |
| **IGN COIL** | IGN COIL | 15A | [G6DP/G6DN] Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4/#5/#6<br>[G8BE] Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4/#5/#6/#7/#8 |
| E4 | ECU4 | 20A | ECM |
| **H/LAMP HI SOL** | H/LAMP HI SOL | 10A | Head Lamp (HI SOL) Relay |
| | H/LAMP WASHER | 25A | Head Lamp Washer Relay |
| 1 | A/CON1 | 10A | A/C Control Module |
| FRT | FRT BLOWER | 40A | Front Blower Relay |
| **IG1** | IGN1 | 40A | IG1 Relay |
| | START | 30A | E/R Junction Block (RLY. 2 - Start Relay) |
| E1 | ECU1 | 15A | ECM |
| T1 | TCU1 | 20A | TCM |
| 3 | ESC3 | 10A | ESC Control Module |

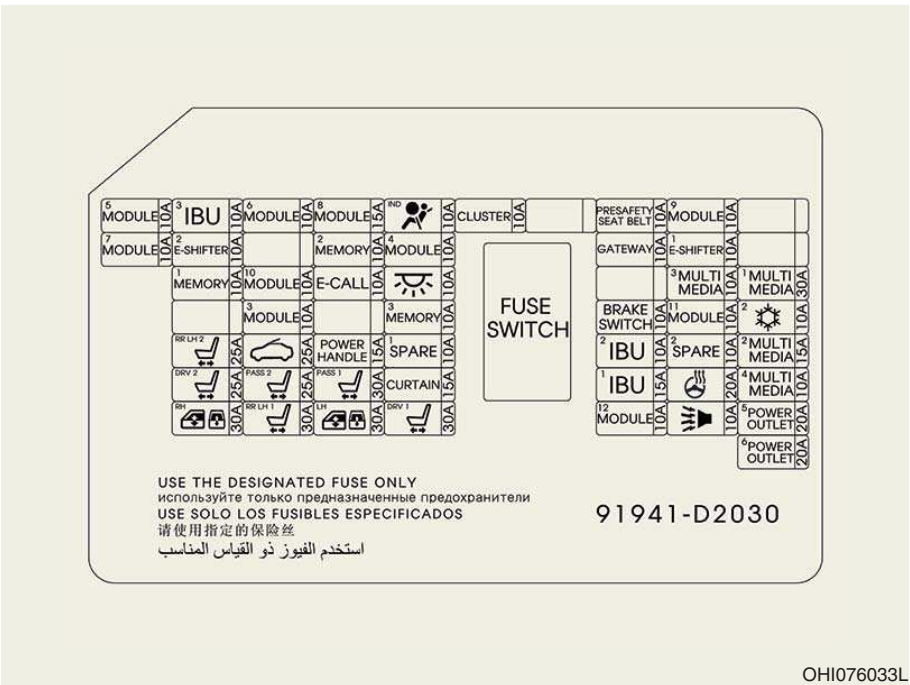
| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 MODULE | MODULE2 | 10A | 4WD ECM, Active Air Flap, Smart Cruse Control Radar |
| 2 1 | MDPS2 | 10A | MDPS Unit, Steering Angle Sensor |
| S5 | SENSOR5 | 10A | [G6DP] E/R Junction Block (RLY. 3 - Vacuum Pump- Relay), Brake Vacuum Switch |
| | HORN | 20A | Horn Relay |
| E2 | ECU2 | 10A | ECM |
| T2 | TCU2 | 15A | TCM, B/UP Lamp Relay, P/N Relay |
| 2 P | EPB2 | 15A | Electric Parking Brake Module |
| 1 P | EPB1 | 15A | Electric Parking Brake Module |
| B/UP LAMP | B/UP LAMP | 10A | B/Up Lamp Relay |
| ACC | ACC | 40A | ACC Relay |

### *Inner panel fuse panel*

Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

## Information

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**




OHI076033L

## Inner panel fuse panel

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5 MODULE | MODULE5 | 10A | Stop Lamp Switch, Driver/Passenger Door Module |
| 7 MODULE | MODULE7 | 10A | Electro Chromic Mirror, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, AMP, A/C Control Module, Front A/C Controller, Air Quality Sensor, MTS E-Call Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module LH/RH Head Lamp LH/RH Driver/Passenger CCS Module Rear CCS Module LH/RH, Driver/Passenger IMS Control Module, Rear IMS Control Module LH/RH, Rear Seat Console Switch |
| 3 IBU | IBU3 | 10A | IBU Control Module |
| 2 E-SHIFTER | E-SHIFTER2 | 10A | Electronic ATM Shift Lever |
| 1 MEMORY | MEMORY1 | 10A | Security Indicator, A/C Control Module, Front A/C Controller, Instrument Cluster, Driver/Passenger IMS Control Module, Rear IMS Control Module LH/RH, Head-Up Display, Analog Clock Driver/Passenger Seat Control Switch, Power Trunk Module, Rear Seat Control Switch LH/RHM Driver/Passenger Smart Key, Outside Handle Rear Smart Key Outside Handle LH/RH |
| RR LH 2 | RR LH2 P/SEAT | 25A | Rear IMS Control Module LH |
| DRV 2 | DRIVER P/SEAT2 | 25A | Driver IMS Control Module |
| RH | PASSENGER P/WINDOW | 30A | Passenger Power Window Module Rear Power Window Module RH |
| 6 MODULE | MODULE 6 | 10A | Crash Pad Switch, Blind Spot Detection Radar LH/RH ECS Unit, Electric Parking Brake Module, Lane Keeping Assist Module, Front Console Switch, Steering Tilt & Telescopic Module |
| 10 MODULE | MODULE 10 | 10A | Cooling Fan Controller (BLDC), Rear Seat Console Switch, Around View Unit, Parking Guide Unit |
| 3 MODULE | MODULE3 | 10A | GATEWAY (B+ (MCU)), Data Link Connector, Hazard Switch |
| | SUNROOF | 25A | Sunroof Motor |
| PASS 2 | PASSENGER P/SEAT2 | 25A | Passenger IMS Control Module |

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| RR LH 1 | RR LH1 P/SEAT | 30A | Rear IMS Control Module LH<br>Rear Electronic Power Seat Relay LH |
| 8 MODULE | MODULE8 | 15A | Head Lamp LH/RH, Adaptive Front Lighting Module |
| 2 MEMORY | MEMORY2 | 10A | Driver Power Outside Mirror |
| E-CALL | E-CALL | 10A | MTS E-Call Module |
| POWER HANDLE | POWER HANDLE | 15A | Steering Tilt & Telescopic Module |
| PASS 1 | PASSENGER P/SEAT1 | 30A | Passenger IMS Control Module<br>Passenger Lumbar Support Unit |
| LH | DRIVER P/WINDOW | 30A | Driver Power Window Module<br>Rear Power Window Module LH |
| IND | AIR BAG IND. | 10A | Instrument Cluster, Front A/C Controller |
| 3 MEMORY | MEMORY3 | 10A | Passenger Power Outside Mirror |
| CURTAIN | CURTAIN | 15A | IBU Control Module |
| 4 MODULE | MODULE4 | 10A | Metal Core Block (PCB #1 - Power Outlet Relay), Analog Clock, IBU Control Module, Overhead Console Lamp, AUX & USB Jack AMP, Electronic ATM Shift Lever, Front/Rear Wireless Charger Front Tray Mood Lamp LH/RH, Front/Rear Console Lamp, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Rear Console Holder Lamp, MTS E-Call Module, Around View Unit, Parking Guide Unit, Rear USB Jack, Rear USB Jack (N/A), Power Outlet Relay |
| | ROOM LAMP | 10A | Overhead Console Lamp, Front/Rear Vanity Lamp LH/RH, Room Lamp, Rear Personal Lamp LH/RH, Glove Box Lamp, Front Foot Lamp LH/RH, Front/Center Mood Lamp LH/RH<br>Luggage Lamp LH/RH, Driver/Passenger Seat Foot Lamp, Driver/Passenger Door Inside Handle Lamp, Driver/Passenger Door Garnish Lamp, Rear Door Garnish Lamp, LH/RH, Rear Door Inside Handle Lamp LH/RH |
| DRV 1 | DRIVER P/SEAT1 | 30A | Driver IMS Control Module, Driver Lumbar Support Unit |
| CLUSTER | CLUSTER | 10A | Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display |

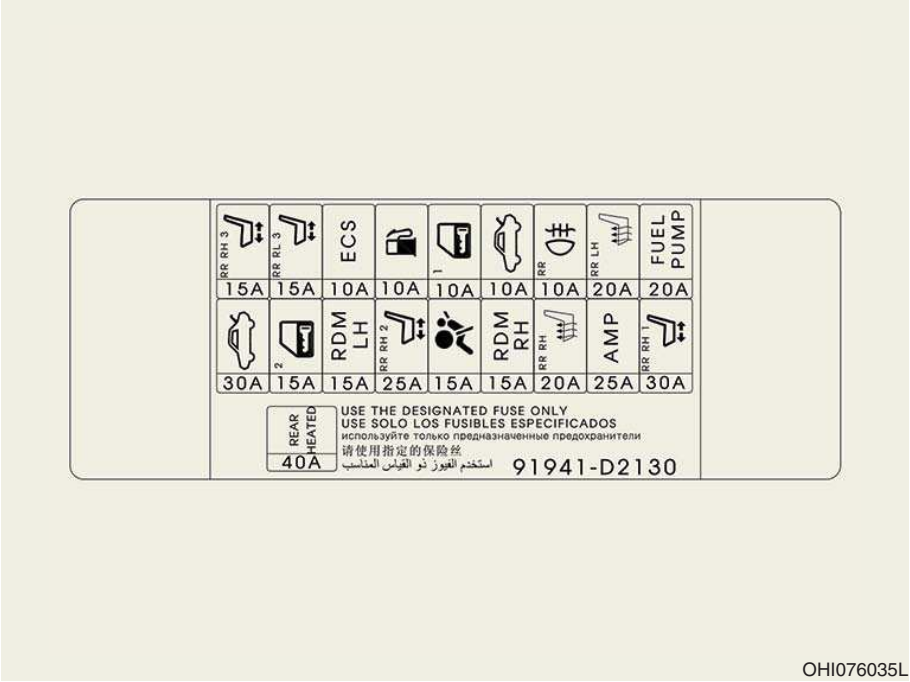
| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRESAFETY SEAT BELT | PRE-SAFETY SEAT BELT | 10A | Pre Active Seat Belt Unit |
| GATEWAY | GATEWAY | 10A | GATEWAY (IG1 (MCU)) |
| BRAKE SWITCH | BRAKE SWITCH | 10A | Stop Lamp Switch, IBU Control Module |
| 2 IBU | IBU2 | 10A | Start/Stop Button Switch |
| 1 IBU | IBU1 | 15A | IBU Control Module |
| 12 MODULE | MODULE12 | 10A | Driver/Passenger Door Module, Rear Door Module LH/RH |
| 9 MODULE | MODULE9 | 10A | Multifunction Switch |
| 1 E-SHIFTER | E-SHIFTER1 | 10A | Electronic ATM Shift Lever |
| 11 MODULE | MULTI MEDIA3 | 10A | Front Monitor, DVD Player, AUX & USB Jack |
| 11 MODULE | MODULE11 | 10A | IBU Control Module |
| | STEERING W/HEATER | 20A | IBU Control Module |
| | B/ALARM | 10A | Burglar Alarm Horn Relay |
| 1 MULTI MEDIA | MULTI MEDIA1 | 30A | Fuse - F42, F51, F52 |
| 2 | A/CON2 | 10A | Metal Core Block (PCB #1 - Blower Relay), Co2 Sensor, Ionizer E/R Junction Lock (RLY.4 - Rear Blower Relay), A/C Control Module, Front Incar Temperature Sensor, Front A/C Controller |
| 2 MULTI MEDIA | MULTI MEDIA2 | 15A | A/V & Navigation Head Unit |
| 4 MULTI MEDIA | MULTI MEDIA4 | 10A | Keyboard, Rear Monitor LH/RH, Rear Seat Console Switch, Rear Audio Switch, Rear USB Jack |
| 5 POWER OUTLET | POWER OUTLET5 | 15A | Front Power Outlet RH |
| 6 POWER OUTLET | POWER OUTLET6 | 20A | Front Power Outlet LH |

### *Trunk fuse panel (Rear fuse box panel)*

Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

## Information

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**



## Trunk fuse panel

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| REAR HEATED | REAR DEFOGGER | 40A | Rear Defogger Relay |
| | POWER TRUNK | 30A | Power Trunk Module |
| 2 | DOOR LOCK2 | 15A | Passenger Door Module |
| RDM LH | RDM LH | 15A | Rear Door Module LH |
| RR RH 2 | RR RH2 P/SEAT | 25A | Rear IMS Control Module RH |
| | AIR BAG | 15A | Air Bag Relay |
| RDM RH | RDM RH | 15A | Rear Door Module RH |
| RR RH | RR RH HEATER SEAT | 20A | Rear CCS Module RH, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module RH |
| AMP | AMP | 25A | AMP (Premium, Premium High) |
| RR RH 1 | RR RH1 P/SEAT | 30A | Rear IMS Control Module RH, Rear Electronic Power Seat Relay RH |
| RR RH 3 | RR RH3 P/SEAT | 15A | Rear Seat Lumbar Support Module RH |
| RR RL 3 | RR RL3 P/SEAT | 15A | Rear Seat Lumbar Support Module LH |
| ECS | ECS | 10A | ECS Unit |
| | FUEL LID | 10A | Fuel Lid Open Relay, Fuel Filler Door & Trunk Lid Switch |
| 1 | DOOR LOCK1 | 10A | Driver Door Module |
| | TRUNK LID | 10A | Trunk Lid Relay |
| RR | RR FOG LAMP | 10A | Rear Fog Lamp Relay |
| RR LH | RR LH HEATER SEAT | 20A | Rear CCS Module LH, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module LH |
| FUEL PUMP | FUEL PUMP | 20A | Fuel Pump Relay |

### *Trunk fuse panel (Battery box fuse panel)*

Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

### Information

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**

■ Except for Brazil

■ For Brazil

OHI076065L/OHI076037

## Trunk fuse panel

| Symbol | Fuse name | Fuse rating | Circuit protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| | B+ | 60A | [Middle East] IGPM (IPS2/IPS3, Fuse - F13/F41) |
| | B+ | 60A | [Middle East] IGPM (Fuse - F37/F38/F39) |
| | B+ | 100A | Rear Sub Junction Block (Fuse - F55 ~ F73) |
| | B+ | 80A | Metal Core Block (PCB #2 Fuse - F57/F58/F59/F60) |
| **AMS** | AMS | 10A | Battery Sensor |

## LIGHT BULBS

Consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is in the LOCK/OFF position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

**NOTICE**

**Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.**

**NOTICE**

**If you don't have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).**

**Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.**

### Information

After heavy driving, rain or washing, headlamp and tail lamp lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside.

This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

### Information (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). These headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

## Headlamp, position lamp, front turn signal lamp, daytime running lamp bulb replacement

### *Type A – HID headlamp*

(1) Headlamp (High/Low)
(2) Position lamp
(3) Turn signal/Daytime running lamp

### *Type B – LED headlamp*

(1) Headlamp (Low)
(2) Headlamp (High)
(3) Position lamp
(4) Turn signal/Daytime running lamp

If the light bulbs does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

**⚠ WARNING**

**HID Headlamp low beam (if equipped)**

**Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, have your vehicle checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

**i Information**

**HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs.**

**HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.**

### Information

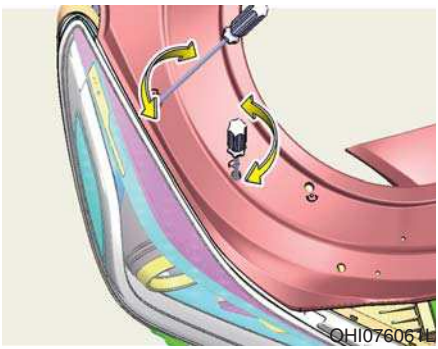
**We recommend that the headlamp aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlamp assembly is reinstalled at an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.**

## Side repeater lamp replacement

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Headlamp aiming - For Europe

### *Headlamp aiming*




1. Inflate the tires to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tire, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through center of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the headlamp and battery in normal condition, aim the headlamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low beam left or right, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low beam up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

   To aim the high beam up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

## *Aiming point (HID headlamp)*

H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (Low beam)
H2 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (High beam)
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (High beam)

OHI076062L

Unit: mm (in)

■ **Except for Russia**

| Vehicle Condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Without driver** | 745 (29.33) | 745 (29.33) | 1584 (62.36) | 1584 (62.36) |
| **With driver** | 736 (28.98) | 736 (28.98) | 1584 (62.36) | 1584 (62.36) |

■ **For Russia**

| Vehicle Condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Without driver** | 765 (30.12) | 765 (30.12) | 1584 (62.36) | 1584 (62.36) |
| **With driver** | 756 (29.76) | 756 (29.76) | 1584 (62.36) | 1584 (62.36) |

## *Aiming point (LED headlamp)*

H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (Low beam)
H2 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (High beam)
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (High beam)

OHI076063L

Unit: mm (in)

■ **Sedan (Except for Russia)**

| Vehicle Condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Without driver** | 745 (29.33) | 606 (23.86) | 1584 (62.36) | 1300 (51.18) |
| **With driver** | 736 (28.98) | 597 (23.50) | 1584 (62.36) | 1300 (51.18) |

■ **Limousine (Except for Russia)**

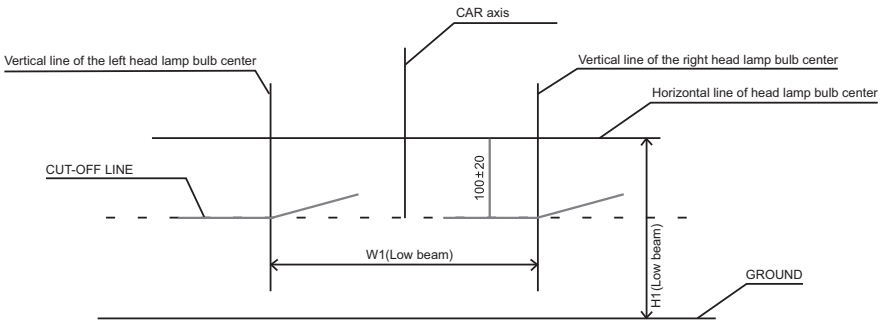
| Vehicle Condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Without driver** | 755 (29.72) | 616 (24.25) | 1584 (62.36) | 1300 (51.18) |
| **With driver** | 746(29.37) | 607 (23.90) | 1584 (62.36) | 1300 (51.18) |

■ **For Russia**

| Vehicle Condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Without driver** | 765 (30.12) | 626 (24.65) | 1584 (62.36) | 1300 (51.18) |
| **With driver** | 756 (29.76) | 617 (24.29) | 1584 (62.36) | 1300 (51.18) |

### *Headlamp low beam (LHD side)*

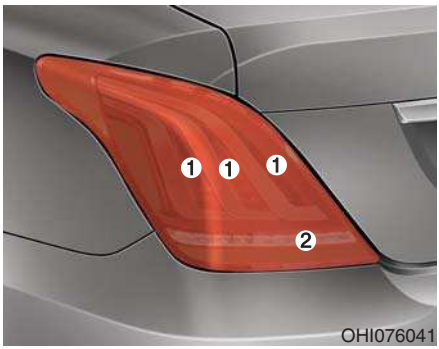
■ Based on 10m screen




OHI076064L

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If headlamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch with 0 positions.

## Rear combination light bulb replacement




(1) Stop/Tail lamp

(2) Turn signal/Back up lamp

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

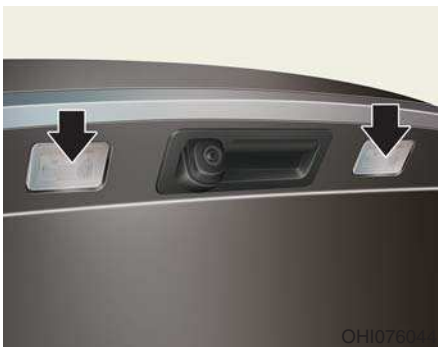
### *Rear fog light*

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## High mounted stop lamp replacement

If the high mounted stop lamp does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

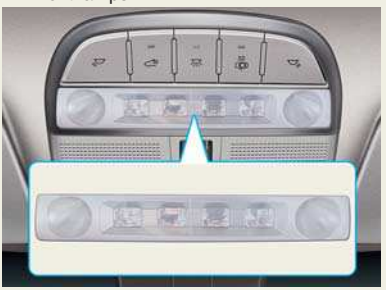
## License plate light bulb replacement



If the license plate light does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

## Interior light bulb replacement

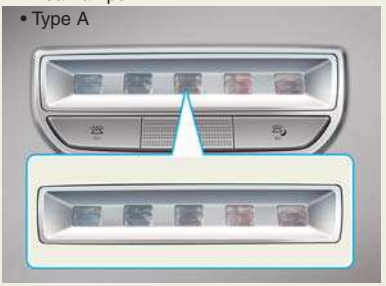
■ Front lamps



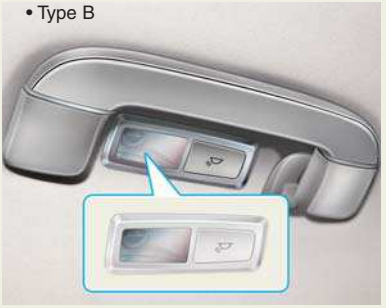
■ Trunk room lamp

■ Rear lamps

• Type A



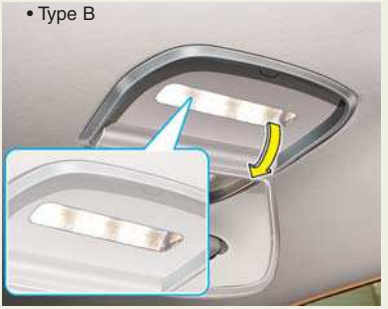
• Type B



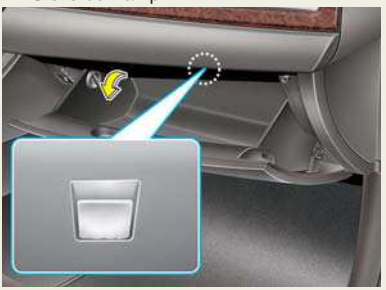
■ Vanity mirror lamp

• Type A

• Type B



■ Glove box lamp



If the interior light does not operate, we recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.

OHI076066L/OHI076068L/OHI076069L/OHI076046/OHI076045/OHI076071L/OHI076070L

# APPEARANCE CARE

## Exterior care

### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

### *High-pressure washing*

- Do not directly point the windows, lighting system (e.g. headlamps, side lights), camera, sensors, bumper, rubber parts (e.g. tire), or vehicle underbody with the pressure-washer nozzle.
- Do not spray highly-pressurized water onto the vehicle body too closely. It may damage the vehicle surface.
- Do not keep spraying highly-pressurized water onto one spot for an extended period of time. It may damage the vehicle surface.
- Focusing highly-pressurized water onto one spot for a short period of time may cause the vehicle damage, even though you maintain a safe distance between the pressure-washer nozzle and the vehicle body. Always pay attention to spray highly-pressurized water all over the vehicle surfaces.

### *Finish maintenance*

#### Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.
If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.
Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.
Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.
A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.
After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

**NOTICE**

- **Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.**
- **Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.**

  **Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.**
- **To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Wet brakes**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**

**NOTICE**

- **Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.**
- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**

## Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.
Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster. Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

**NOTICE**

- **Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.**
- **Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.**

### *Finish damage repair*

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

**Information**

**If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.**

### *Bright-metal maintenance*

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

### *Underbody maintenance*

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter.

Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

**WARNING**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**

### *Aluminum wheel maintenance*

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

### *Corrosion protection*

#### Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produces cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

#### Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

#### High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

#### Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed.

For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

## To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

### Keep your car clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

### Keep your garage dry

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

### Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

**Don't neglect the interior**

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

## Interior care

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately.
See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

**NOTICE**

**Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not store any volatile liquids, such as perfume, air freshener, or deodorant, inside the vehicle. Any contamination with those liquids may damage the instrument cluster area, crash pad, or leather/plastic parts. If contaminated, immediately clean the contaminated area with clean water.**

**NOTICE**

**When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.**

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

#### Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

#### Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

**NOTICE**

**Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.**

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

***NOTICE***

**Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.**

# EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system

(2) Evaporative emission control system

(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

## 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

## 2. Evaporative emission control system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

### *Canister*

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

### *Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)*

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

## 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

### *Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)*

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Exhaust**

**Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.**

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

### *Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)*

**⚠ WARNING**

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  **Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engine.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. If you run out of gasoline, it could cause the engine to misfire and result in excessive loading of the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

# Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions ..... 8-2
Engine ..... 8-2
Bulb wattage ..... 8-3
Air conditioning system ..... 8-3
Tires and wheels ..... 8-4
Tire load and speed capacity ..... 8-5
Luggage volume ..... 8-5
Gross vehicle weight ..... 8-5
Recommended lubricants and capacities ..... 8-6
Recommended SAE viscosity number ..... 8-7
Vehicle identification number (VIN) ..... 8-8
Vehicle certification label ..... 8-8
Tire specification and pressure label ..... 8-8
Engine number ..... 8-9
Air conditioner compressor label ..... 8-9
Refrigerant label ..... 8-9
Declaration of conformity ..... 8-10

# DIMENSIONS

mm (in.)

| Items | | Sedan | Limousine |
|---|---|---|---|
| Overall length | | 5,205 (204.92) | 5,495 (216.34) |
| Overall width | | 1,915 (75.39) | |
| Overall Height | Except Russia | 1,495 (58.86) | 1,505 (59.25) |
| | For Russia | 1,515 (59.65) | |
| Front tread | 245/50 R18 | 1,630 (64.17) | |
| | 245/45 R19 | 1,640 (64.57) | |
| Rear tread | 245/50 R18 | 1,659 (65.31) | |
| | 275/40 R19 | 1,639 (64.53) | |
| Wheelbase | | 3,160 (124.41) | 3,450 (135.83) |

# ENGINE

| Item | Lambda 3.3 T-GDI | Lambda 3.8 GDI | Tau 5.0 GDI |
|---|---|---|---|
| Displacement cc (cu. In) | 3,342 (203.94) | 3,778 (230.54) | 5,038 (307.43) |
| Bore x Stroke mm (in.) | 92x83.8 (3.62x3.29) | 96x87 (3.77x3.42) | 96x87 (3.77x3.42) |
| Firing order | 1-2-3-4-5-6 | 1-2-3-4-5-6 | 1-2-7-8-4-5-6-3 |
| No. of cylinders | 6, V-type | 6, V-type | 8, V-type |

## BULB WATTAGE

| Light bulb | | | | Wattage | Bulb type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Front | Headlamp | Low | Type A | 35 | D3S |
| | | | Type B | LED | LED |
| | | High | Type A | 35 | D3S |
| | | | Type B | LED | LED |
| | Turn signal lamp | | | LED | LED |
| | Position lamp | | | | |
| | Daytime Running Lamp | | | | |
| Rear | Rear combination lamp | Stop/Tail | | LED | LED |
| | | Turn signal | | | |
| | | Back up | | | |
| | License plate lamp | | | | |
| | High mounted stop lamp | | | | |
| | Fog lamp (if equipped) | | | | |
| Interior | Map lamp | | | LED | LED |
| | Room lamp | | | | |
| | Front/Rear vanity mirror lamp | | | | |
| | Globe box lamp | | | | |
| | Trunk room lamp | | | | |
| | Personal lamp | | | | |

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

g (oz.)

| Item | Weight of volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant | 700±25 (24.69±0.88) | R-1234yf |
| Compressor lubricant | 120±10 (4.23±0.35) | PAG (FD46XG) |

We recommend that you contact an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products for more details.

# TIRES AND WHEELS

| Item | Tire size | Wheel size | Inflation pressure bar (kPa, psi) | | | | Wheel lug nut torque lbf·ft (kgf·m, N·m) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Normal load * | | Maximum load | | |
| | | | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tire | 245/50 R18 | 8.0Jx18 | 2.4 (240, 35) | 2.4 (240, 35) | 2.4 (240, 35) | 2.4 (240, 35) | 11~13 (79~94, 107~127) |
| | 245/45 R19 | 8.5Jx19 | 2.4 (240, 35) | - | 2.4 (240, 35) | - | |
| | 275/40 R19 | 9.5Jx19 | - | 2.4 (240, 35) | - | 2.4 (240, 35) | |
| Compact spare tire | T155/80 R18 | 4.0Tx18 | 4.2 (420, 60) | 4.2 (420, 60) | 4.2 (420, 60) | 4.2 (420, 60) | |
| | T155/70 R19 | 4.0Tx19 | | | | | |

* Normal load : Up to 3 persons

**NOTICE**

**When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.**

**Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or not work properly.**

## Information

- **It is permissible to add 3 psi to the standard tire pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tires typically loose 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 7°C (12°F) temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, recheck your tire pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.**
- **An air pressure generally decreases, as you drive up to a high-altitude area above sea level. Thus, if you plan to drive a high-altitude area, check the tire pressures in advance. If necessary, inflate them to a proper level. (Air inflation per altitude: +10 kPa/1km or +2.4psi/1mile )**

## TIRE LOAD AND SPEED CAPACITY

| Item | Tire size | Wheel size | Load capacity | | Speed capacity | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | LI *1 | kg | SS *2 | km/h |
| Full size tire | 245/50 R18 | 8.0Jx18 | 100 | 800 | W | 270 |
| | 245/45 R19 | 8.5Jx19 | 102 XL | 850 | W | 270 |
| | 275/40 R19 | 9.5Jx19 | 105 XL | 925 | W | 270 |
| Compact spare tire | T155/80 R18 | 4.0Tx18 | 113 | 1,150 | M | 130 |
| | T155/70 R19 | 4.0Tx19 | 113 | 1,150 | M | 130 |

*1 LI : LOAD INDEX
*2 SS : SPEED SYMBOL

## LUGGAGE VOLUME

| Item | Lambda 3.3 | Lambda 3.8 | Tau 5.0 |
|---|---|---|---|
| VDA | 484 *l* (17.09 cu ft) | | |

## GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

kg (lbs)

| Items | Sedan | | | | | | Limousine |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lambda 3.3 T-GDI | | Lambda 3.8 GDI | | Tau 5.0 GDI | | Tau 5.0 GDI |
| | 2WD | AWD | 2WD | AWD | 2WD | AWD | AWD |
| Gross vehicle weight | 2,600 (5,732) | 2,670 (5,886) | 2,520 (5,556) | 2,590 (5,710) | 2,630 (5,798) | 2,700 (5,952) | 2,720 (5,997) |

# RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil *1 *2 Shell HELIX Motor oils | 3.3 T-GDI | | 6.9 l (7.29 US qt.) | ACEA A5/B5 |
| | 3.8 GDI | | | |
| | 5.0 GDI | 2WD | 8.0 l (8.45 US qt.) | |
| | | AWD | 9.2 l (9.72 US qt.) | |
| Automatic transmission fluid | 3.8 GDI | | 9.1 l (9.62 US qt.) | GS ATF SP-IV-RR, Genesis/Hyundai ATF SP-IV-RR |
| | 3.3 T-GDI / 5.0 GDI | | 9.2 l (9.72 US qt.) | |
| Coolant | 3.3 T-GDI | | 9.8 l (10.36 US qt.) | Mixture of antifreeze and water (phosphate based ethylene glycol coolant for aluminum radiator) |
| | 3.8 GDI | Except Europe | 8.4 l (8.88 US qt.) | |
| | | For Europe | 9.0 l (9.51 US qt.) | |
| | 5.0 GDI | | 11.4 l (12.05 US qt.) | |
| Brake fluid | | | 0.7~0.8 l (0.74~0.85 US qt.) | FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4 |
| Front differential oil (AWD) *3 | | | 0.7 l (0.74 US qt.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL MS517-15GT 75W/85 (GL-5) (SK HK SYN GEAR OIL 75W/85 EQUIVALENT) |
| Rear differential oil *3 | | | 1.4 l (1.48 US qt.) | |
| Transfer case oil (AWD) | | | 0.62 l (0.66 US qt.) | SHELL TF0870B |
| Fuel | | | 83 l (21.9 US gal.) | Refer to “Fuel requirements” in foreword section |

*1 : Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 : Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other addition+al benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year’s time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 : If the front/rear differential is submerged, we recommend that you visit an authorized retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace differential oil.

## Recommended SAE viscosity number

**NOTICE**

**Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.**

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flow ability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance; however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage. When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

**Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers**

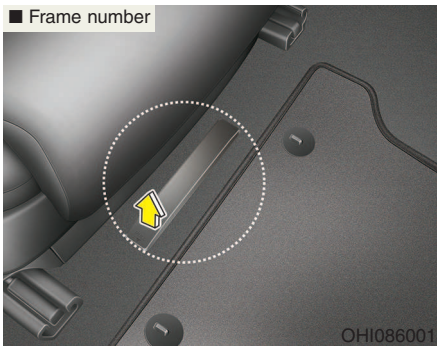
| Temperature | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | °C | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
| | (°F) | -10 | 0 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | |
| Gasoline Engine Oil *1 *2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | 20W-50 | | | |
| | | | | | | 15W-40 | | | | |
| | | | | | 10W-30 | | | | | |
| | | 5W-30, 5W-40 | | | | | | | | |

*1 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30. However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

*2 : For the Lambda 3.3 T. GDI / Tau 5.0 GDI, we recommend you to use high-grade gasoline (above RON 96). You may still use other types of gasoline. However, those may negatively affect your vehicle power and fuel economy.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

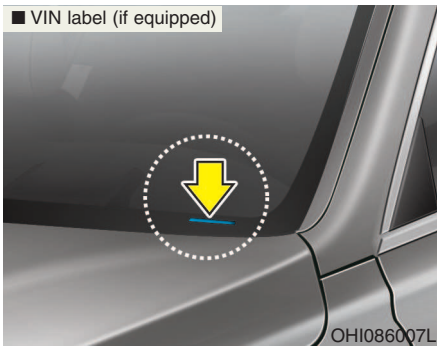
■ Frame number




The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

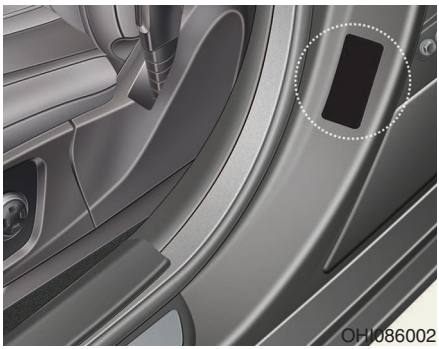
The number is punched on the floor under the passenger seat. To check the number, open the cover.

■ VIN label (if equipped)



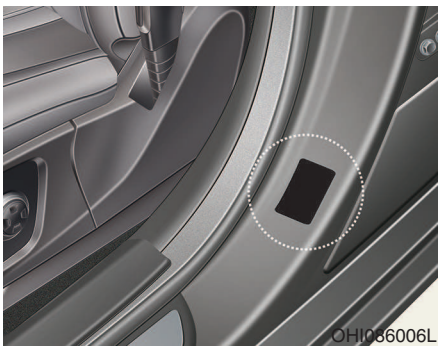

The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL




The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

## TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

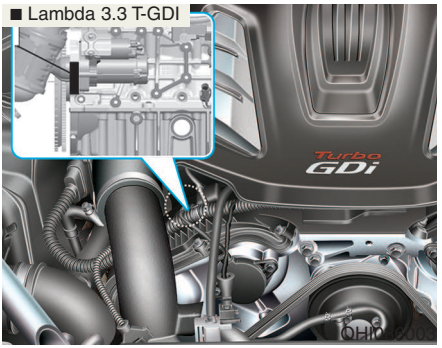



The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

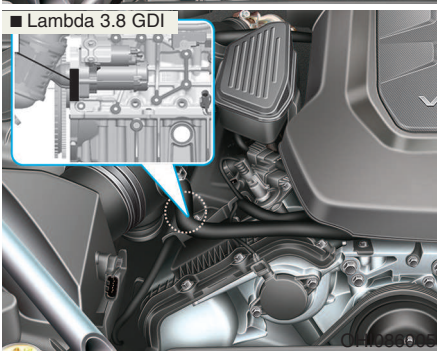
The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## ENGINE NUMBER

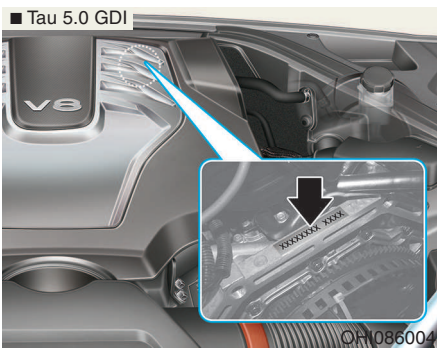
■ Lambda 3.3 T-GDI




■ Lambda 3.8 GDI

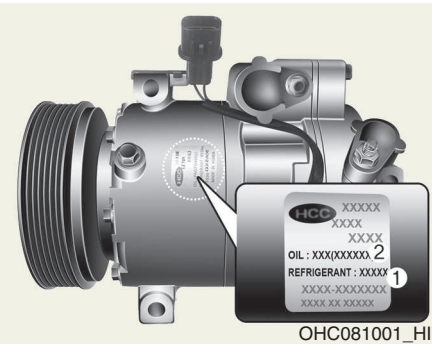


■ Tau 5.0 GDI



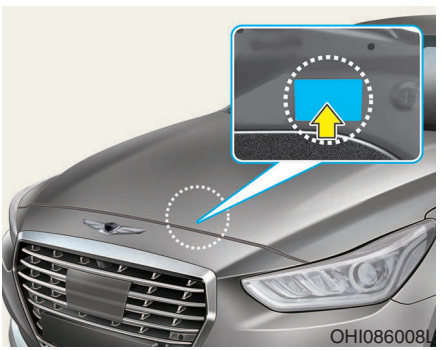

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

## AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL




A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

## REFRIGERANT LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)




The refrigerant label is located at the engine hood.

# DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Genesis Branded Vehicle web site as follows:

http://service.hyundai-motor.com

# Index

I

## A

Advanced smart cruise control system .....5-76
AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) .....3-95
Air bag warning labels .....2-77
Air bags .....2-58
Additional safety precautions.....2-76
Air bag collision sensors .....2-70
Air bag inflation conditions .....2-72
Air bag non-inflation conditions .....2-73
Air bag warning labels .....2-77
Curtain air bags .....2-63
Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat.....2-69
Driver’s air bag .....2-60
Driver’s knee air bag.....2-60
How does the air bags system operate? .....2-64
Passenger's front air bag.....2-60
Side air bags .....2-61
SRS Care .....2-75
SRS components and functions .....2-50
SRS warning light .....2-64
What to expect after an air bag inflates .....2-68
Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision .....2-70
Air cleaner .....7-30
Air Conditioning refrigerant label.....3-128
Air conditioning system specification.....8-3
Air conditioning system .....3-113
Alarm system.....3-13
All wheel drive (AWD) .....5-21
Antenna .....4-3
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) .....5-35
Appearance care .....7-76
Exterior care .....7-76
Interior care .....7-81
Armrest (rear seat).....2-23
Around view monitoring (AVM) system .....3-110
Ashtray .....3-140
Auto defogging system .....3-132
AUTO light .....3-89
Automatic climate control system.....3-113
Air conditioning .....3-125
Air Conditioning refrigerant label .....3-128

Air intake control .....3-122
Air quality system (AQS) .....3-123
Automatic heating and air conditioning.....3-114
Fan speed control .....3-124
Manual heating and air conditioning .....3-115
Mode selection .....3-116
OFF mode.....3-125
SYNC button.....3-121
System maintenance.....3-128
Temperature control .....3-120
Temperature unit conversion.....3-120
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) system .....5-60
Automatic locking retractor (ALR).....2-35
Automatic transmission.....5-11
Good driving practices .....5-19
LCD display messages .....5-17
Paddle shifter (manual mode) .....5-15
Parking .....5-16
Shift lock system.....5-15
When the battery is discharged .....5-16
Automatic ventilation.....3-133
Aux, USB and iPod.....4-2

## B

Bag hanger.....3-145
Battery .....7-35
Battery recharging .....7-37
Battery saver function .....3-94
Before driving .....5-5
Blade type fuse.....7-53
Blind spot detection (BSD) system.....5-49
*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology hands-free.....4-5
Bottle holder, see cup holder.....3-140
Brake fluid.....7-27
Braking system.....5-25
Anti-lock brake system (ABS).....5-35
Auto hold.....5-31
Disc brakes wear indicator.....5-26
Electronic parking brake (EPB) .....5-26
Electronic stability control (ESC).....5-36
Emergency stop signal (ESS).....5-41

Good braking practices .....5-42
Hill-start assist control (HAC) .....5-41
Power brakes .....5-25
Vehicle stability management (VSM) .....5-39
Bulb replacement
Headlamp .....7-69
Front position lamp .....7-69
Front turn signal lamp .....7-69
Daytime running lamp .....7-69
Headlamp aiming .....7-70
High mounted stop lamp .....7-74
Interior light bulb .....7-75
License plate light bulb .....7-74
Rear combination light bulb.....7-74
Side repeater lamp .....7-70
Bulb wattage.....8-3
Button start/stop, see engine start/stop button .....5-6

## C

Camera (Rear view) .....3-105
Capacities (Lubricants) .....8-6
Care
Exterior care .....7-76
Interior care .....7-81
Tire care.....7-39
Cartridge type fuse .....7-53
Cellular phone holder.....3-137
Center console storage .....3-135
Central door lock switch .....3-11
Certification label.....8-8
Chains
Tire chains .....5-114
Changing a Tire with TPMS .....6-14
Checking tire inflation pressure .....7-40
Child restraint system (CRS) .....2-45
Booster seats.....2-48
Child seat list.....2-57
Child seat restraint for vehicle ISOFIX positions.....2-53
Child Seat Restraint Suitability for Seat Position using the Seat Belt .....2-56
Children always in the rear .....2-45
Forward-facing child restraint system .....2-48

Installing a child restraint system (CRS) .....2-48
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage for children .....2-49
Rearward-facing child restraint system.....2-47
Securing a child restraint system seat with
"Top-tether Anchorage" system .....2-52
Securing a child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt .....2-54
Securing a child restraint system with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System" .2-51
Selecting a child restraint system (CRS) .....2-46
Child-protector rear door lock.....3-12
Clean air .....3-133
Climate control air filter.....7-31
Clock .....3-144
Clothes hanger.....3-145
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster.....3-44
Compact spare tire replacement.....7-44
Coolant .....7-23
Cooling fluid, see engine coolant.....7-23
Crankcase emission control system .....7-83
Cruise control system.....5-71
Cup holder.....3-140
Curtain air bags .....2-63

## D

Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination .....3-45
Dashboard, see instrument cluster .....3-44
Daytime running light (DRL) .....3-95
Defogging (Windshield).....3-130
Defroster.....3-112
Outside mirror defroster.....3-112
Rear window defroster .....3-112
Defrosting (Windshield).....3-130
Dimensions.....8-2
DIS navigation system .....4-5
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination .....3-45
Displays, see instrument cluster.....3-44
Door locks .....3-9
Auto door lock/unlock features.....3-12
Central door lock switch .....3-11
Child-protector rear door lock .....3-12
Power door latch .....3-10
Drinks holders, see cup holder.....3-140

Drive mode integrated control system .....5-44
ECO mode .....5-47
INDIVIDUAL mode .....5-48
SMART mode .....5-45
SPORT mode .....5-47
Driver attention alert (DAA) .....5-105
Driver's air bag .....2-60
Driver's knee airbag .....2-60
Driving at night .....5-111
Driving in flooded areas .....5-112
Driving in the rain .....5-112
Dynamic stability damping control (DSDC) .....5-43

## E

Easy access function .....3-16
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) .....3-19
Electric power steering (EPS) .....3-17
Electronic control suspension (ECS) .....5-43
Electronic parking brake (EPB) .....5-26
Electronic stability control (ESC) .....5-36
Emergency commodity .....6-28
Emergency locking retractor (ELR) .....2-35
Emergency stop signal (ESS) .....5-41
Emergency towing .....6-26
Emission control system .....7-83
Crankcase emission control system .....7-83
Evaporative emission control System .....7-83
Exhaust emission control system .....7-84
Engine compartment .....1-8, 7-3
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement .....7-51
Engine coolant .....7-23
Engine coolant temperature guage .....3-46
Engine number .....8-9
Engine oil .....7-21
Engine specification .....8-2
Engine Start/Stop button .....5-6
Evaporative emission control System .....7-83
Exhaust emission control system .....7-84
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items .....7-18
Exterior care .....7-76

Exterior overview
Front view .....1-2
Rear view .....1-3

## F

Flat tire
Use of compact spare tires .....6-20
Jack and tools .....6-16
Jack label .....6-22
EC Declaration of conformity for Jack .....6-23
Floor mat anchor(s) .....3-145
Fluid Brake fluid .....7-27
Washer fluid .....7-29
Front seat adjustment .....2-8
Easy access switch .....2-13
Forward and rearward adjustment .....2-10
Lumbar support .....2-12
Seat bolster adjustment .....2-12
Seat cushion height and tilt .....2-11
Seat cushion length adjustment .....2-10
Seat shoulder adjustment .....2-12
Seatback angle .....2-11
Seatback pocket .....2-13
Front seat headrests .....2-25
Adjusting the height up and down .....2-25
Forward and rearward adjustment .....2-25
Removal/Reinstall .....2-26
Front wiper deicer .....3-112
Fuel filler door .....3-41
Fuel gauge .....3-47
Fuel requirements .....F-5
Fuse switch .....7-54
Fuses .....7-50
Blade type fuse .....7-53
Cartridge type fuse .....7-53
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement .....7-51
Fuse switch .....7-54
Fuse/relay panel description .....7-55
Inner panel fuse replacement .....7-53
Main fuse .....7-52
Multi fuse .....7-52

## G

Gauges .....3-46
Genesis adaptive control suspension.....5-43
Glove box .....3-136
Glove box lamp .....3-100
Gross vehicle weight .....8-5

## H

Hazard warning flasher .....6-2
Hazardous driving conditions.....5-110
Headlamp delay function .....3-94
Headlamp leveling device .....3-96
Headlamp position.....3-90
Headlamp washer .....3-96
Headlight bulb replacement .....7-69
Headrest.....2-24
    Front seat headrests .....2-25
    Rear seat headrests .....2-27
Head-up display .....3-86
Heated steering wheel .....3-18
Heater .....3-114
High beam operation .....3-90
Highway driving.....5-112
Hill-start assist control (HAC) .....5-41
Hood .....3-31
Horn .....3-18

## I

If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly .....6-4
If the engine overheats .....6-8
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing .....6-3
If the engine stalls while driving.....6-3
If the engine turns over normally but doesn’t start.....6-4
If the engine will not start .....6-4
If you have a flat tire.....6-16
If you have a flat tire while driving .....6-3
Impact sensing door unlock .....3-12

Important safety precautions ..... 2-3
Air bag hazards ..... 2-3
Always wear your seat belt ..... 2-3
Control your speed ..... 2-4
Driver distraction ..... 2-3
Keep your vehicle in safe condition ..... 2-4
Restrain all children ..... 2-3
In case of emergency while driving ..... 6-3
Indicator light ..... 3-49
Inner panel fuse replacement ..... 7-53
Inside rearview mirror ..... 3-19
Instrument cluster ..... 3-44
Instrument panel illumination ..... 3-45
Gauges ..... 3-46
LCD display control ..... 3-74
LCD display messages ..... 3-60
LCD modes ..... 3-75
Trip computer ..... 3-83
User settings mode ..... 3-78
Warning and indicator lights ..... 3-49
Instrument panel overview ..... 1-5
Interior care ..... 7-81
Interior features ..... 3-140
Ashtray ..... 3-140
Bag hanger ..... 3-145
Bottle holder, see cup holder ..... 3-140
Clock ..... 3-144
Clothes hanger ..... 3-145
Cup holder ..... 3-140
Floor mat anchor(s) ..... 3-145
Luggage net (holder) ..... 3-148
Power outlet ..... 3-143
Rear curtain ..... 3-146
Rear door window curtain ..... 3-147
Rear vanity mirror ..... 3-142
Sunvisor ..... 3-142
Interior lamp AUTO cut ..... 3-98
Interior light ..... 3-98
Front lamps ..... 3-98
Front vanity mirror lamp ..... 3-100
Glove box lamp ..... 3-100
Interior lamp AUTO cut ..... 3-98

Puddle lamp.....3-101
Rear lamps.....3-99
Rear vanity mirror lamp.....3-100
Trunk room lamp.....3-101
Interior overview.....1-4

## J

Jack and tools.....6-16
Jump starting.....6-5

## L

Label
Tire sidewall labeling.....7-45
Tire specification and pressure label.....8-8
Vehicle certification label.....8-8
Lane departure warning system (LDWS).....5-93
Lane keeping assist system (LKAS).....5-97
Lap/shoulder belt.....2-36
LCD display.....3-74
Assist mode.....3-77
LCD modes.....3-75
Trip computer mode.....3-76
Turn By Turn (TBT) mode.....3-76
User settings mode.....3-78
LCD display control.....3-74
LCD display messages.....3-60
LCD modes.....3-75
Light bulb replacement.....7-69
Light.....3-89
AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System).....3-95
Auto light.....3-89
Battery saver function.....3-94
Daytime running light (DRL).....3-95
Headlamp delay function.....3-94
Headlamp leveling device.....3-96
Headlamp position.....3-90
Headlamp washer.....3-96
High beam operation.....3-90
Parking lamp position.....3-90

Rear fog lamp ..... 3-94
Smart cornering light ..... 3-93
Smart high beam ..... 3-91
Traffic change ..... 3-96
Turn signals ..... 3-93
Lubricants and capacities ..... 8-6
Luggage net (holder) ..... 3-148
Luggage volume ..... 8-5

## M

Main fuse ..... 7-52
Maintenance
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items ..... 7-18
Maintenance services ..... 7-6
Maintenance under severe usage conditions ..... 7-16
Normal maintenance service ..... 7-11
Owner maintenance ..... 7-7
Scheduled maintenance services ..... 7-10
Tire maintenance ..... 7-45
Maintenance services ..... 7-6
Mirrors ..... 3-19
Adjusting the outside rearview mirrors ..... 3-20
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) ..... 3-19
Folding/Unfolding the outside rearview mirror ..... 3-21
Inside rearview mirror ..... 3-19
Outside rearview mirror ..... 3-20
Reverse parking aid function (outside rearview mirror) ..... 3-22
Moonroof, see sunroof ..... 3-28
Multi fuse ..... 7-52
Multimedia system ..... 4-2
Antenna ..... 4-3
Aux, USB and iPod ..... 4-2
*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology hands-free ..... 4-5
DIS navigation system ..... 4-5
Steering wheel audio control ..... 4-4

## O

Odometer ..... 3-48
Oil (Engine) ..... 7-21
Outside mirror defroster ..... 3-112
Outside rearview mirror ..... 3-20
Outside temperature gauge ..... 3-47
Owner maintenance ..... 7-7

## P

Paddle shifter (manual mode) ..... 5-15
Parking assist system ..... 3-106
Parking brake ..... 5-26
Parking lamp position ..... 3-90
Passenger's front air bag ..... 2-60
Power brakes ..... 5-25
Power door latch ..... 3-10
Power outlet ..... 3-143
Power steering ..... 3-17
Power window lock button ..... 3-26
Pre-active seat belt (PSB) ..... 2-41
Pre-tensioner seat belt ..... 2-38
Puddle lamp ..... 3-101

## R

Rear center seatbelt ..... 2-38
Rear console storage ..... 3-136
Rear curtain ..... 3-146
Rear door window curtain ..... 3-147
Rear fog lamp ..... 3-94
Rear seat adjustment ..... 2-14
    Armrest ..... 2-23
    Carrying long/narrow cargo ..... 2-23
    Easy access switch ..... 2-15
    Forward, backward and seatback angle ..... 2-14
    Leg support ..... 2-21
    LOCK button ..... 2-22
    Lumbar support ..... 2-15

Relaxation mode (VIP seat) ....2-17
Return function (VIP seat) ....2-19
VIP switches for adjusting the front passenger seat ....2-16
Rear seat headrests ....2-27
Adjusting the headrest back and forth ....2-28
Adjusting the height up and down (manual)....2-27
Adjusting the height up and down (power) ....2-28
Folding the center headrest ....2-28
Rear vanity mirror ....3-142
Rear view camera ....3-105
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures ....7-39
Recommended lubricants and capacities ....8-6
Recommended SAE viscosity number....8-7
Remote window opening/closing function (with smart key)....3-27
Removable towing hook ....6-26
Replacement light bulb ....7-69
Returning used vehicles ....F-8
Reverse parking aid function (outside rearview mirror)....3-22
Rocking the vehicle ....5-110
Rotation (Tire) ....7-42

## S

Scheduled maintenance services ....7-10
Seat belt warning light ....2-34
Seat belts ....2-33
Additional seat belt safety precautions ....2-42
Care of seat belts ....2-44
Do not lie down....2-44
Height adjustment ....2-36
Keep belts clean and dry ....2-44
Lap/shoulder belt....2-36
One person per belt ....2-43
Periodic inspection ....2-44
Pre-active seat belt (PSB) ....2-41
Pre-tensioner seat belt ....2-38
Rear center seatbelt ....2-38
Seat belt restraint system ....2-35
Seat belt safety precautions....2-33
Seat belt use and children ....2-42

Seat belt use and injured people .....2-43
Seat belt use during pregnancy .....2-42
Seat belt warning light .....2-34
When to replace seat belts.....2-44
Seat coolers .....2-31
Seat position memory system .....3-14
Recalling memory positions.....3-15
Storing memory positions .....3-15
Seat warmers (front).....2-29
Seatback pocket.....2-13
Seats .....2-5
Armrest (rear seat) .....2-23
Front seat adjustment .....2-8
Headrest.....2-24
Rear seat adjustment .....2-14
Safety precautions .....2-7
Seat coolers .....2-31
Seat warmers (front).....2-29
Seatback pocket.....2-13
Shift lock system.....5-15
Side air bags .....2-61
Smart blind spot detection system .....5-56
Smart cornering light.....3-96
Smart cruise control system .....5-76
Smart high beam .....3-91
Smart key.....3-4
Battery replacement .....3-8
Mechanical key .....3-6
Smart trunk.....3-38
Smooth cornering .....5-111
Snow tires.....5-113
Spare tire
Compact spare tire replacement.....7-44
Special driving conditions
Driving at night .....5-111
Driving in flooded areas.....5-112
Driving in the rain .....5-112
Hazardous driving conditions.....5-110
Highway driving.....5-112
Rocking the vehicle.....5-110
Smooth cornering .....5-111
Speed sensing door lock.....3-12

Speedometer .....3-46
Starting difficulties, see engine will not start.....6-4
Steering wheel .....3-17
Electric power steering (EPS) .....3-17
Heated steering wheel .....3-18
Horn.....3-18
Power steering .....3-17
Tilt steering / Telescope steering.....3-17
Steering wheel audio control.....4-4
Storage compartment.....3-135
Cellular phone holder.....3-137
Center console storage .....3-135
Glove box .....3-136
Rear console storage .....3-136
Sunglass holder .....3-137
Wireless cellular phone charging system.....3-138
Sunglass holder .....3-137
Sunroof inside air recirculation.....3-133
Sunroof.....3-28
Sunvisor.....3-142

## T

Tachometer .....3-46
Theft-alarm system.....3-13
Tilt steering / Telescope steering.....3-17
Tire chains .....5-114
Tire load and speed capacity .....8-5
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....6-10
Changing a Tire with TPMS .....6-14
Low tire pressure position and tire pressure telltale .....6-12
Low tire pressure telltale.....6-12
TPMS malfunction indicator.....6-13
Tire rotation.....7-42
Tire specification and pressure label.....8-8
Tires and wheels.....7-39
Checking tire inflation pressure .....7-40
Compact spare tire replacement.....7-44
Low aspect ratio tires .....7-49
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures.....7-39
Tire care.....7-39
Tire maintenance .....7-45

Tire replacement.....7-43
Tire rotation.....7-42
Tire sidewall labeling.....7-45
Tire traction.....7-45
Wheel alignment and tire balance.....7-43
Wheel replacement.....7-45
Towing.....6-24
Traffic change.....3-96
Transaxle Shift Indicator.....3-65
Trip computer.....3-83
Accumulated Info display.....3-85
Digital speedometer.....3-85
Driving Info display.....3-84
Fuel economy.....3-83
Trunk
Emergency trunk safety release.....3-37
Non-Powered trunk.....3-32
Power trunk.....3-33
Smart trunk.....3-38
Trunk room lamp.....3-101
Turn signals.....3-93

## U

User settings mode.....3-78

## V

Vanity mirror lamp (front).....3-100
Vanity mirror lamp (Rear).....3-100
Vehicle break-in process.....F-8
Vehicle certification label.....8-8
Vehicle identification number (VIN).....8-8
Vehicle stability management (VSM).....5-39
Vehicle weight.....5-117
Overloading.....5-117

## W

Warning and indicator lights .....3-49
Warning light .....3-49
Washer fluid .....7-29
Welcome system .....3-97
    Door handle lamp .....3-97
    Headlamp and parking lamp .....3-97
    Interior lamp .....3-97
    Puddle lamp .....3-97
Wheel alignment and tire balance .....7-43
Wheel replacement .....7-45
Windows .....3-23
    Power window lock switch .....3-26
    Remote window opening/closing function (with smart key) .....3-27
Windshield defrosting and defogging .....3-130
Windshield washers .....3-104
Windshield wipers .....3-102
Winter driving .....5-113
    Snow tires .....5-113
    Tire chains .....5-114
Wiper blades replacement .....7-33
Wipers and washers .....3-102
    Headlamp washer .....3-96
    Windshield washers .....3-104
    Windshield wipers .....3-102
Wireless cellular phone charging system .....3-138